A

GRAMMAR

OF THE

JAPANESE WRITTEN LANGUAGE.

BY

W. G. ASTON, C.M.G. D.Lit.,

Late Japanese Secretary, H.B.M.'s Legation, Tòkiò, Japan.

THIRD EDITION, Revised and Corrected.

London:
LUZAC & CO.

Yokohama:
LANE, CRAWFORD & CO.

1904
REPLACING
278123-3
# CONTENTS

Introductory Remarks  ...  ...  page i.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CHAPTER</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I. Writing, Pronunciation, Accent, Letter-changes</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II. Classification of Words</td>
<td>... ... ... 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III. Uninflected Principal Words (Na). Noun, Pronoun, Numeral Adjective, Adverb, Conjunction, Interjection</td>
<td>... ... ... ... ... 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV. Inflected Principal Words (Kotoba). Conjugations, Derivative Verbs, Compound Verbs, Derivative Adjectives, Compound Adjectives</td>
<td>... ... 79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. Uninflected Teniwoha suffixed to Na</td>
<td>... ... 106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI. Uninflected Teniwoha added to Kotoba</td>
<td>... 134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII. Inflected Teniwoha</td>
<td>... ... ... 148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VIII. Humble and Honorific Verbs, Auxiliary Verbs, Verbs used as Adverbs and Conjunctions</td>
<td>... 161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IX. Syntax</td>
<td>... ... ... ... 170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X. Prosody</td>
<td>... ... ... ... 184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendix. Specimens of Japanese</td>
<td>... ... 199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Index.</td>
<td>534678</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
WORKS BY THE SAME AUTHOR.

A GRAMMAR OF THE JAPANESE SPOKEN LANGUAGE.

THE NIHONGI; or, Chronicles of Japan from the Earliest Times to A.D. 697. Translated from the Original Chinese and Japanese.

A HISTORY OF JAPANESE LITERATURE.

SHINTO. In preparation.
INTRODUCTORY REMARKS.

In its structure, the Japanese language possesses all the characteristics of the Turanian family. It is in the main an agglutinative language, that is to say, the roots of words suffer no change,* and the results which are obtained in European languages by inflection are arrived at in Japanese by the use of separate particles suffixed to the root. Like the other languages of this family, Japanese has no formative prefixes such as the German GE, or the reduplication of the perfect in Latin and Greek verbs. Its poverty in conjunctions and copious use of participles instead is another point of resemblance. The Japanese language is further an example of the rule common to all languages of this family, that every word which serves to define another word invariably precedes it. Thus the adjective precedes the noun, the adverb the verb, the genitive the word which governs it, the objective case the verb, and the word governed by a preposition the preposition.

The number of vocables common to Japanese with its kindred tongues is much smaller than might have been expected. The only language which contains any con-

* It may be a question whether the addition of the vowels a, i, u and e to the roots of verbs (see Chap. IV.) is agglutination or inflection. To the Japanese mind they are not distinct from the root, and a Japanese knows nothing of such forms as mat (wait), tab (eat). These vowels have no meaning in themselves. They only serve to modify the meaning of the root, and therefore the term inflection appears more appropriate. It has accordingly been used in this treatise to distinguish these changes from agglutination proper, or the addition of particles which have a distinct meaning of their own, and are recognized by those who use the language as separate from the root.
siderable proportion of words which are also found in Japanese is that spoken in the Loo-choo Islands. Loochooan is very closely related to Japanese, but Mr. B. H. Chamberlain's researches show clearly that its grammar differs so much that it cannot be regarded as a mere dialect.

The Korean language has also an affinity with Japanese. The number of common roots is apparently not considerable, but the resemblance in grammatical structure is very close.

The vocabulary of the Japanese language, as it appears in its oldest monuments, is, in so far as it is possible to judge, homogeneous. It contains only a very few of the Chinese vocables which are so plentiful in its later forms.

According to Japanese accounts, the study of Chinese was first introduced into Japan in the third century of the Christian era, when Chinese books and teachers were brought over from Korea;* but even if these accounts can be depended upon, the influence of these teachers was probably confined to the Court, and had little permanent effect. A succession of other teachers afterwards arrived from Korea, but it was not till the sixth century, when Buddhism was first introduced into Japan, that the study of Chinese became general. From this time it spread rapidly. The profane literature of China was also studied, and Chinese words began to find their way into the Japanese language. This process has gone on uninterruptedly up to the present day, and now

* The old Japanese histories inform us that a teacher of Chinese called Ajiki came over to Japan from Korea A.D. 284, for which the correct date is 404. In the following year a second, named Wani, was sent for. Wani is said to have brought with him the Ron-go, or Confucian Analects, and Sen-ji-mon, or thousand character classic, but there must be a mistake about the last-named work, as it was not written till more than two hundred years later. These two scholars were subsequently made instructors to the Imperial Prince. There is, however, evidence that Chinese books were brought to Japan in the preceding reign.
the Chinese words in the language far outnumber those of native origin.

The Chinese pronunciation first adopted by the Japanese was that of the province of Go (Woo or U in Chinese). This province contained Nankin, the capital of China under the eastern Tsin dynasty, which began A.D. 317, and it also contained the capital of the southern of the two empires into which China was divided during the dynasties which succeeded from A.D. 420 to A.D. 589. It was the Go pronunciation that the Buddhist priests used (and continue to use) in their litanies, and the greater number of the Chinese words which found their way into Japanese in the early period of Chinese learning have come down to us with the Go pronunciation. Most of the kana are Chinese characters pronounced according to the Go-on, or with slight modifications of it. The reason for choosing this dialect was no doubt simply because the province where it was spoken lies nearest to Japan, and was at that time the most flourishing part of the Chinese Empire. The intercourse between Japan and this part of China was considerable, and was not confined to matters of religion and learning only. Many Chinese customs and much of their civilization were adopted at the same time. To this day a draper’s shop is called in Japan a Go-fuku-ya, or “Go-clothing-house,” showing that what we are accustomed to consider the Japanese national costume was at first an imitation of the dress of Go. Japanese grammarians give as an additional reason for preferring the Go pronunciation, or Go-on as it is called, that it approached more closely to the sound of the Japanese language, and was therefore more easy of pronunciation. It is not to be supposed, however, that any Japanese, except perhaps a few scholars who visited China, ever acquired the true Chinese pronunciation. It is impossible to represent any Chinese dialect accurately by the
Japanese syllabary. English written in this way becomes almost unrecognizable, and the metamorphosis undergone by Chinese when subjected to the same process is much greater.

A second mode of pronouncing Chinese was introduced into Japan not long after the Go-on. This is what is known as the Kan-on. Kan (in Chinese Han) is the name of the celebrated dynasty which ruled in China during the period from B.C. 206 till A.D. 265. Under it flourished the greatest literary men that China has produced, and even at the present day the Chinese are proud to call themselves "sons of Han."

In a number of expressions Kan is used by the Japanese as equivalent to "Chinese." Thus, Kan-seki are Chinese books; Kam-bun, Chinese composition; Kan-go, a Chinese word; Kan-gaku, Chinese learning, &c. In the term Kan-on however, the word Kan has a narrower signification. The Kan-on was the dialect which continued to be spoken in the province of Honan which had contained the seat of the government of the Han dynasty. It was the most refined and cultivated language of China at this period, and occupied a position similar to that now held by the so-called Mandarin dialect. It was recognized as the standard pronunciation by the Chinese teachers from Go, although they spoke and taught their own dialect; and even the Buddhist divines, who did more than any other class of scholars to establish the Go-on, did not altogether neglect the study of the Kan-on. The Go-on had become widely adopted before much attention was paid to the Kan-on. The latter was, however, recognized as the standard, and succeeded gradually in establishing itself as the more usual pronunciation of Chinese words. It is now, except in rare cases, the only one given in Japanese dictionaries of the Chinese character, but a multitude of words is still pronounced according to the Go-on. The Kan-on often coincides with the Go-on, but it is as frequently widely
INTRODUCTION.

different, and the use of these two systems of pronunciation has therefore given rise to considerable confusion. In the case of the more ancient nengô, or names of periods, and of the names of the Mikados, it is often doubtful which is the correct pronunciation, and in many cases either may be followed at pleasure.

The modern official Chinese language is called by Japanese the Tô-in. Tô, in Chinese Tang, is the name of the dynasty which flourished in China from A.D. 618 to A.D. 906, but this word is used by the Japanese for China and the Chinese nation generally. A Chinaman is popularly called Tô-jiin, and Tô-in means simply the modern Chinese as opposed to the Japanese traditional pronunciation. The Tô-in has been generally adopted in the case of a very few words only, as for instance 明, which is pronounced Ming (Chinese Ming) when the dynasty of that name is meant. It is also the pronunciation used in their litanies by the branch of the Zenshiu sect of Buddhists known as the Òbakû ha. The Òbakû ha was founded by missionaries from the monastery of Òbakû, in China, who came over to Japan A.D. 1692, and established themselves at Uji, not far from Kiôto. Like the Go-on and Kan-on, the Tô-in differs considerably in the mouths of Japanese from the true Chinese pronunciation.

The accents are neglected in the present Japanese pronunciation of Chinese words. There are, however, some traces of them to be found in the spelling. Where the same character has two different accents, the spelling usually varies, and the characters which have the entering accent in Chinese may be recognized from the Japanese spelling ending in tsu, chi, ku, ki, or fu.

Chinese words can generally be easily distinguished from those of Japanese origin. They end much oftener in diphthongs and in the letter n, and are usually associated in twos or threes, so that when one is known to be Chinese the
others may be presumed to be so also. Another aid to their recognition is the fact that in Japanese syntax they are always treated as nouns. There are, however, a few cases in which genuine Japanese words have assumed an appearance which makes them hard to be distinguished from Chinese. For instance *sata*, though really a Japanese word, identical with the root of *sadaka*, *sadameru*, &c., is usually written with the Chinese characters 沙汰, and in this shape it has all the appearance of a Chinese word. On the other hand, a good number of Chinese words which were introduced in the early days of Chinese learning have become so thoroughly assimilated that they might easily be mistaken for Japanese words. Such are *zeni* (cash), which is only another form of *sen* 錢, *semi* (cicada) for *sen* 螳, *enishi* (connexion) for *en-shi* 緣, *juni* (letter) for *fun* 文.

During the fourteen centuries over which our knowledge of the Japanese written language extends, its grammar has suffered but little change,* and such modifications as it has undergone have been slow and gradual. There is no gap between ancient and modern Japanese like that which divides Latin from Italian, or even that which separates the English of the period before the Norman conquest from that now spoken. Such changes as have occurred consist chiefly in the disuse of certain particles and terminations, in modifications of the meaning and use of others, and in the

* The grammatical structure of the Japanese language is looked upon by native writers as an institution of Divine origin, and they attribute to this cause the substantial unity which it has maintained throughout its entire history. Heretical views of grammar, or bad grammar, are therefore a very serious matter in Japan. *Amatsu oho ni kami no mi tsutahe ifu ni shi habereba, sono okite ni tagahi ayamaru koto ha ni kuni wo kegashi-tatematsuru no tsuni fukak' arubeshi.* "Grammar having been handed down to us from the great and august gods of heaven, errors contrary to their ordinances must be a heinous crime, casting disgrace upon our august country."

The progress of these changes marks three stages in the history of the Japanese language. 1st, that of development, extending to about A.D. 900; 2nd, that of maturity, including the four following centuries; and lastly, that of decay, extending from A.D. 1300 up to to the present time.

The latter half of the eighteenth century and the first half of the present witnessed a brilliant revival of the study of the old language, and it may be doubted whether Japanese has not attained a higher degree of perfection in the archaeological and philological works of Mabuchi, Hirata, and more especially Motowori, than even in the golden age of its literature. But it is to be feared that this is no more than an eddy in the main current. The old language is at present falling more and more into neglect, and the faculty of writing or even understanding it is becoming rarer every day. Its use is confined to learned treatises far removed from the daily concerns of life.

The style most in vogue at present (and used in official documents, newspapers, &c.) is modelled on literal translations of Chinese books. It is charged with Chinese words, idioms, and constructions to such a degree that, whether read or written, it is often entirely unintelligible to an unlettered Japanese, and its grammar is only a skeleton of the luxuriant system of the older language. [See specimens VII., VIII., and IX. at the end of this volume.]

The modern popular written language occupies an intermediate position between the old language, of which it is the true offspring, and the mongrel Chinese type just described. It is looser in its syntax and poorer in grammatical appliances than the former, but it has enriched its vocabulary by a liberal adoption of Chinese words. The Chinese element is, however, confined to the vocabulary, and there are few traces
in this style of Chinese idioms and constructions. Books addressed to the unlearned class—such as novels, tales, the romances which take the place of history and biography to all but scholars, a certain proportion of the popular poetry, &c.—are composed in this style.

The spoken dialect of Japan differs so considerably in its grammar from the written idiom that it almost deserves to be regarded as a new language. Its position is not unlike that of Italian in the middle ages, when it was only a spoken dialect, the language used for literary purposes being exclusively Latin. The difference, however, is much less in degree than in the case of Italian and Latin. The principal characteristic of the spoken language is a tendency to pass from the agglutinative into the inflectional stage of development, many suffixes which are in the written language distinct from the root being in the spoken dialect blended with it in such a way that the separate elements can no longer be distinguished except by the scholar. For instance, where the written language has Shimahi-tari, the spoken has Shimatta; for the written form Ari-tari-keri, the spoken dialect has Attake; for Ara-mu. Arō; for Kata-ku, it has sometimes Katō, and so on.

Among these various forms of Japanese, the classical literary language of the tenth, eleventh, twelfth, and thirteenth centuries has been selected as the most suitable standard for grammatical purposes, and such differences as the other forms of the language present have been noted as variations from it. The spoken dialect, however, differs so considerably from any of the written forms that it has been found more convenient to exclude it from the scope of the present work, and to make it the subject of a separate treatise.

A considerable portion of the literature of Japan is written in the ancient classical Chinese language which is still
employed to a small extent. There seems, however, every reason to believe that it will soon share the fate of Latin in Europe, and fall entirely out of use except for a few purposes of a special character.
CHAPTER I.

WRITING, PRONUNCIATION, ACCENT, LETTER-CHANGES.

The origin and history of an alphabet, which in several forms has been found inscribed on certain ancient scrolls deposited in the treasuries of Japanese Temples, have been a fruitful subject of controversy amongst native scholars. Some have maintained that these letters, which they call the Shindaiji, or "letters of the age of the gods," are of vast antiquity, but it is now admitted that they are nothing more than the Korean script known as Onmunn, invented by a king of that country towards the middle of the fifteenth century, and actually in use there at the present day.

Japanese is written by means of Chinese characters both in the square (see I., II., VII., and VIII. of the specimens at the end of this volume) and cursive (see specimens IV., V., and IX.), and also in several intermediate forms. The order is the same as that of Chinese, viz., from top to bottom in columns proceeding from right to left.

In writing Japanese, a Chinese character may have one of four different values.

1. It may be the equivalent of a Chinese word (on or koe).
2. It may be the equivalent of the synonymous Japanese word (kun or yomi).
3. It may represent the mere sound of the Chinese word (ji-on no kana).
4. It may represent the mere sound of the Japanese word (kun no kana).

In the two former cases a Chinese character has an ideographic value; in the two latter it has a phonetic value. When used in the former capacity, Chinese characters are
termed by Japanese writers *mana*; when used in the latter capacity, they are called *kana*. *Mana* means "true name," implying that this is the true use of a character, while *kana* (contracted for *kari-na*) means "borrowed name," as in this case the mere sound of a character is "borrowed" in order to express the whole, or more frequently only a part of a word unconnected with it in meaning.

Every Chinese character may be used as the equivalent of a Chinese or of the synonymous Japanese word, and a considerable number of them are also occasionally employed phonetically. For example, 天 (heaven), may be equivalent to (1) the Chinese word *ten*, (2) the Japanese word *ame*, or (3) the mere sound *te* or *ten*. 天 is not used for the mere sound *ame*, as distinguished from the word *ame* (heaven). An instance of a Chinese character used to represent the mere sound of a Japanese word is 三, which is used for the sound *mi* (4), as well as for the Japanese word *mi* or *mitsu* "three" (2), and the synonymous Chinese word *san* (1).

In the oldest Japanese writing, the Chinese characters are generally *mana*, and have their ideographic value. The *Kojiki*, for instance, is written principally in *mana*, as are also the *norito*, or ancient Shintō prayers. Specimen I. (from the *Kojiki*) at the end of this volume is an example of this stage of Japanese writing. It will be observed that the Chinese order of the characters is followed, and it might perhaps be

* This may be illustrated by the following example of the results which would have taken place had the Roman numeral signs been made use of in a similar way in writing English:—"On the HICenary (1) a C (2) times I C (3) him to you, although it tC (4); i.e., "on the ter-centenary a hundred times I sent him to you, although it thundered." Here C has first its proper meaning, and represents the Latin word *cent*. (a hundred); second, it has its proper meaning, and represents the English word "hundred"; third, it represents the Latin sound *cent* only, the meaning being different; fourth, it represents the English sound *hundred*, the meaning being different.
suspected that the *Kojiki* was intended as Chinese, and not as Japanese at all. The authority of Motowori, however, is against such a supposition, and he has even given us a restoration in *Kana* of the entire text, as he conceives it to have been originally read. In the *norito*, the characters are written in their Japanese order.

But even in this early stage it was occasionally found necessary to give the Chinese characters a phonetic value, in order to write Japanese proper names of unknown or doubtful derivation, and other words or particles for which there were no convenient Chinese equivalents. Besides, in the case of poetry, *mana* could only give the meaning, whereas with *kana*, not only the meaning, but the precise words and particles used could be expressed, and consequently the metre rendered discernible. These causes gradually gave rise to a more extended use of the Chinese characters as mere phonetic signs. The poetry in the *Kojiki* is written in *kana*, and in the *Manyōshū*, a collection of poems extending over the period from the fifth to the ninth century, a gradual increase in the proportion of phonetic signs is plainly observable.

At this period the analysis of the sounds of the language into *forty-seven* syllables had not been made, and inasmuch as many different characters were used not only for each of these forty-seven sounds, but also for many of a composite nature, great confusion resulted, much of which is now avoided by the use of the alphabets, or rather syllabaries, known as the *Katakana* and *Hiragana*. There is some doubt respecting the exact date of their first introduction, but it is known that both had come into general use by the end of the ninth century of our era.

The *Hiragana* syllabary can hardly be called an invention. It consists simply of abbreviated cursive forms of a limited number of the more common Chinese characters. This syllabary consists of forty-seven syllables, but each syllable
is represented by several characters, and as some of these are written in several different ways, the entire number of signs amounts to about three hundred.

The Katakana syllabary is of a more artificial character. It consists, like the Hiragana, of forty-seven syllables, but there is only one sign for each. Most of the Katakana characters are abbreviated forms of Chinese square characters, one side (kata) or a part being taken to represent the entire character. Thus 🇯 (ژ) is an abbreviated form of 🇯, 🇧 (ر) of ژ, and so on.*

Modern Japanese writing is an intermixture of Chinese characters used as ideographic signs (mana) with Katakana or Hiragana. The proportion in which these elements are combined varies greatly, and is different even in different editions of the same book, words which are at one time represented by mana, being at another expressed by means of Katakana or Hiragana. In other respects, too, there is great irregularity. The following rules are therefore subject to numerous exceptions:—

1. Mana are used for all words of Chinese origin, and for the roots of the more important Japanese words (na and kotoba).

2. Katakana and Hiragana are used for grammatical terminations, and for the less important words of Japanese origin (teniwoha).

3. Katakana or Hiragana are often found, as in Specimen VI. at the end of this book, written to the right of a Chinese character, to represent phonetically the Chinese or Japanese word to which it is equivalent. They may also be written to the left, as in Specimen III., but this is less common.

* It is a curious fact, that notwithstanding its greater simplicity and convenience, the lower classes of Japanese are unacquainted with the Katakana, and even scholars prefer the Hiragana for most purposes.
4. *Katakana* are found with the square form of the Chinese character (see Specimens I., II., VII., and VIII.); *Hiragana* with the cursive form (see Specimens IV., V., and IX.).

5. *Katakana* are occasionally employed amongst *Hiragana* in writing interjections, foreign words, and also where italics would be used *in* English.

The pronunciation of the *Katakana* and *Hiragana* is not always identical with that of the characters from which they are derived. 𭋹 and 𭋤, for instance, are pronounced *te*, although derived from 𭃲, which has the sound *ten*.

The *Katakana* and *Hiragana* are arranged by native grammarians in two different orders. That in popular use is styled *iroha*, from its first three letters. In this arrangement the forty-seven sounds constituting the syllabary have been made into a line of *doggel* verse as an aid to the memory. The following table (Table I.) exhibits the *Katakana* and *Hiragana* arranged in this manner. The first column contains the English pronunciation, the second the *Katakana* with the Chinese characters of which they are abbreviated forms, and the remaining columns the *Hiragana* letters, together with the Chinese square characters from which they are derived. In this table the *Hiragana* letters are arranged in order of their most frequent occurrence, those in the first space being far more frequently met with than the others. It is this variety which is given in native educational works and taught in schools, and at first the student had perhaps better confine his attention to it.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRON.</th>
<th>KATA-KANA.</th>
<th>HIRAGANA.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| i     | い
伊
イ
イロ
呂
呂 | 吴
吴
吴
呂
呂
呂
呂 | 伊
伊
呂
呂
呂
呂
呂
呂 |
| ro    | は
ハ
ハハ | 乃
乃
乃
巴
巴
巴 |
| ha    | 二
ニ
八
八
八 | 走
走
走
盤
盤
盤 |
| ni    | ネ
ニ | 丸
丸
丸 |
| ho    | ホ
保 | 保
保
保
保
保
保

* Nigori only, i.e., ba.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRON.</th>
<th>KATAKANA</th>
<th>HIRAGANA</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ho</td>
<td>ほ</td>
<td>ほ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cont'd.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td>の</td>
<td>の</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to</td>
<td>と</td>
<td>と</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chi</td>
<td>ち</td>
<td>ち</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ri</td>
<td>り</td>
<td>り</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nu</td>
<td>ゆ</td>
<td>ゆ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Nigori only, i.e., be.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRON.</th>
<th>KANA</th>
<th>HIRAGANA</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ru</td>
<td>流</td>
<td>流</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wo</td>
<td>乎</td>
<td>乎</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wa</td>
<td>和</td>
<td>和</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ka</td>
<td>加</td>
<td>加</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yo</td>
<td>與</td>
<td>與</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Nigori only, i.e., ga.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRON.</th>
<th>KATA-KANA</th>
<th>HIRAGANA</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ta</td>
<td>た</td>
<td>た</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>re</td>
<td>レ</td>
<td>連</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>so</td>
<td>ソ</td>
<td>砂</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tsu</td>
<td>ツ</td>
<td>津</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ne</td>
<td>は</td>
<td>稲</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Nigori only, i.e., 20.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRON.</th>
<th>KATA-KANA.</th>
<th>HIRAGANA.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>26.</td>
<td>na</td>
<td>ナ奈</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>な奈</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>那</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.</td>
<td>ra</td>
<td>ラ良</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ラ良</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>柱佳年</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.</td>
<td>mu</td>
<td>ム年</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ム年</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>武業舞</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.</td>
<td>u</td>
<td>ユ云</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ユ云</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>武業舞</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>武業舞</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>イ届</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>イ届</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>乃届</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>乃届</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>ノ乃</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ノ乃</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>乃届</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>乃届</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRON.</td>
<td>KATAKANA</td>
<td>HIRAGANA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>オ</td>
<td>お</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ku</td>
<td>く</td>
<td>く</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ya</td>
<td>ヤ</td>
<td>や</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ma</td>
<td>マ</td>
<td>も</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ke</td>
<td>ケ</td>
<td>け</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu</td>
<td>フ</td>
<td>ふ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TABLE I.**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRON.</th>
<th>KATA-KANA</th>
<th>HIRAGANA</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>33.</td>
<td>ko</td>
<td>こ に に に に に に</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34.</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>え え え え え え</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35.</td>
<td>te</td>
<td>テ て て て て て</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>ア ア ア ア ア ア</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37.</td>
<td>sa</td>
<td>サ サ サ サ サ サ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38.</td>
<td>ki</td>
<td>キ キ キ キ キ キ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRON.</td>
<td>KATA-KANA</td>
<td>HIRAGANA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ki</td>
<td>キ’un / キ’un</td>
<td>キ‘ん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yu</td>
<td>ユ‘ん</td>
<td>ユ‘ん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>me</td>
<td>メ‘ん</td>
<td>メ‘ん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mi</td>
<td>ミ‘ん</td>
<td>ミ‘ん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shi</td>
<td>シ‘ん</td>
<td>シ‘ん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>イ‘ん</td>
<td>イ‘ん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hi</td>
<td>ヒ‘ん</td>
<td>ヒ‘ん</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Nigori only, i.e., じ.
TABLE I.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRON.</th>
<th>KATA-KANA</th>
<th>HIRAGANA</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mo</td>
<td>母</td>
<td>母</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>母</td>
<td>母</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>母</td>
<td>母</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>母</td>
<td>母</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>se</td>
<td>世</td>
<td>世</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>世</td>
<td>世</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>世</td>
<td>世</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>世</td>
<td>世</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>su</td>
<td>須</td>
<td>須</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>須</td>
<td>須</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>須</td>
<td>須</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>須</td>
<td>須</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n</td>
<td>二</td>
<td>二</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>二</td>
<td>二</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>二</td>
<td>二</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The arrangement given in the following table (Table II.) is usually preferred by native scholars to the *iroha*. Here the syllabary (in the *Katakana* form) is arranged after a more scientific method, those syllables which contain the same vowels being arranged in upright columns, and those containing the same consonants in horizontal columns. It will be observed that this table contains fifty letters.
TABLE II.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VOWEL</th>
<th>K</th>
<th>S</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>H</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>Y</th>
<th>R</th>
<th>W</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>アカ</td>
<td>サタ</td>
<td>ナハ</td>
<td>マヤ</td>
<td>ラウ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a</td>
<td>ka</td>
<td>sa</td>
<td>ta</td>
<td>na</td>
<td>ha</td>
<td>ma</td>
<td>ya</td>
<td>ra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>イキ</td>
<td>シチ</td>
<td>ニヒ</td>
<td>ミイ</td>
<td>コリ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>i</td>
<td>ki</td>
<td>shi</td>
<td>chi</td>
<td>ni</td>
<td>hi</td>
<td>mi</td>
<td>yi</td>
<td>ri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U</td>
<td>ウク</td>
<td>スヌ</td>
<td>フム</td>
<td>エウル</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>u</td>
<td>ku</td>
<td>su</td>
<td>tsu</td>
<td>nu</td>
<td>fu</td>
<td>mu</td>
<td>yu</td>
<td>ru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>エケ</td>
<td>セテ</td>
<td>ネヘ</td>
<td>メネ</td>
<td>レエ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>e</td>
<td>ke</td>
<td>se</td>
<td>te</td>
<td>ne</td>
<td>he</td>
<td>me</td>
<td>ye</td>
<td>re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>オコ</td>
<td>ソト</td>
<td>ノホ</td>
<td>モヨ</td>
<td>ロヲ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>o</td>
<td>ko</td>
<td>so</td>
<td>to</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>ho</td>
<td>mo</td>
<td>yo</td>
<td>ro</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Amongst these, however, the three letters which have circles drawn round them are not in use, and have only been introduced in order to fill up the breaks in the series.

The reason why no letters are required for \( yi \) and \( sou \) is no doubt the close affinity of \( y \) and \( i \) and \( w \) and \( u \), which renders \( y \) and \( w \) almost inaudible in this combination. \( Ye \) is equal to \( yi+a \), and the same remark is therefore applicable to it as to \( yi \).
$N$ final is omitted from the second Table. It is properly not a Japanese letter, the termination of the future, which is nearly the only place where it is found in Japanese words, having been anciently not $n$, but $mu$. It sometimes represents an $r$ which has been assimilated to an $n$ or $m$ following.

The Japanese language does not possess the sounds $si$, $ti$, $tu$, or $hu$. For $si$ it has $shi$; for $ti$, $chi$; for $tu$, $tsu$; and for $hu$, $fu$.

$*$ and $\tau$, though belonging to the $w$ column, are not pronounced $wi$ and $we$, but $i$ and $e$. No doubt the original pronunciation was $wi$ and $we$. $Wo (♀)$ was formerly considered one of the $a (♀) i (♀) u (♀) e (♀)$ series, and $o (♀)$ was placed along with $wa (♀) i (♀) uu (♀) e (♀)$. Motowori corrected this error, but it is still found in many Japanese books. The Wakun Shiwoiri, for instance, follows the old practice.

It will have been observed that the preceding Tables do not contain the letters $g$, $z$, $j$, $d$, $b$, and $p$. Neither the Hiragana nor the Katakana originally provided any means of distinguishing the syllables commencing with these letters from those beginning with $k$, $s$, $sh$, $t$, and $h$, and there are many old printed books in which the distinction is not marked. The passage at the end of this volume, taken from the Takeiori Monogatari, is in example of this practice. The diacritic mark (♀) known as the *nigori, placed to the right of the letter, is now made use of for this purpose. It is the same for both Hiragana and Katakana. The letter $p$ had no existence in the older form of the language. It is now marked by a small circle (♀), called the han-nigori, written to the right of those kana which commence with $h$ or $f$. The

* Nigori means "impurity." It is opposed to suiti (purity), the term used in speaking of the unchanged sounds. An old form of the nigori, now little used, is $\text{oo}$, as $♀♀ (ga)$. The nigori is often omitted, even at the present day.
use of these marks will be best understood from the sub-
joined table:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>か</th>
<th>き</th>
<th>く</th>
<th>け</th>
<th>こ</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>が</td>
<td>ぎ</td>
<td>ぐ</td>
<td>げ</td>
<td>ご</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>さ</td>
<td>し</td>
<td>す</td>
<td>せ</td>
<td>そ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ザ</td>
<td>ジ</td>
<td>ジ</td>
<td>ジ</td>
<td>ジ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>タ</td>
<td>チ</td>
<td>チ</td>
<td>チ</td>
<td>チ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ダ</td>
<td>デ</td>
<td>デ</td>
<td>デ</td>
<td>デ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ハ</td>
<td>ヒ</td>
<td>フ</td>
<td>フ</td>
<td>フ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>バ</td>
<td>ビ</td>
<td>ブ</td>
<td>ブ</td>
<td>ブ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>パ</td>
<td>ピ</td>
<td>プ</td>
<td>プ</td>
<td>プ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

OTHER MARKS USED IN WRITING.

1 (Katakana) or ひ (Hiragana) for koto, a “thing or action.” This sign is also used, more especially in the
forms に or に, to mark the beginning of a speech or
quotation—thus に. In this position it stands for koto,
in the sense of kotoba, “words.” In dramas it marks the
beginning of the prose speeches of the actors,

ひ is also used for koto. It is a combination of the
Hiragana ひ and ひ.

ひ or ひ, said to be a form of ひ, is used for a Chinese
character when repeated a second time, as ひ ichi-ichi, “one
by one.”

(with Katakana) and ひ (with Hiragana), said to be a
also abbreviated forms of ひ, are put for the repetition of a word
of more than one syllable, as ひと-bito, "men;" まて mate, "wait! wait!"

, said to be a further contraction of the same character, is used for the repetition of a single syllable, as わ ha! ha! ha! ha! koko, “here.”

○ と and は are marks of punctuation, but they correspond not so much to our periods and commas as to the rhythmical pauses made by the Japanese in reading. They will be found very unsafe guides to the structure of a sentence.

○ marks the beginning of a chapter or section. —, which is merely the character いち, “one,” marks the beginning of shorter divisions than ○. It is often put where “item” might be used in English. A document, the sections of which are marked in this way, is called a ひとつ-書き or “one-writing.”

□ is the equivalent of the English [ ] or ( ).

□ marks the end of a paragraph.

は is for とき toki, “time.”

↑ is also used for とき toki, “time.”

へ is for とき tomo, “although.”

乙 is put for こうざる gozaru, “to be.”

玉 is written for たま tama, the first two syllables of たくみ, the honorific auxiliary verb.

メ is put in Katakana for しばしite, “having done.”

One or two lines drawn to the right of a word or character have the same effect as italics or capitals in English printing, as カ ヲ .

The same effect is produced by a line drawn round a word or letter, as ケル.
is put for goza, the first two syllables of gozaru, "to be."

is for masu, the polite termination of verbs in the spoken language.

In writing or printing Japanese, the divisions between the words of a sentence are not marked by corresponding spaces between the letters, as in English. The Katakana are written distinct from each other, but there is nothing to show where one word ends and another begins, while in Hiragana the letters are joined to each other or spaces left between them, entirely according to the caprice of the writer, and with no reference to the natural divisions of the words.

Japanese printing is in most cases an exact imitation of the written manuscript, the paper being pasted on the blocks which are then cut out, thus making a facsimile of the writing. This is, of course, impossible with moveable types, the use of which has lately spread extensively, but even in their case no spaces are left to show the divisions between the words, as in European printing.

**PRONUNCIATION.**

- a has the sound of a in father.
- i " " " " i " machine.
- u " " " " oo " book.
- e " " " " ey " they.
- o " " " " o " so.

U frequently becomes i after sh, j, or ch in the Yedo pronunciation of Chinese words, as shuku, which is pronounced shiku.

The consonants have the same sounds as in English, except in the following cases:

- S, Sh.—Se and shi are the Yedo pronunciation. In some provinces these syllables are pronounced she and si.
- Ji, the nigori of shi, is pronounced exactly like dji, the nigori of chi. A different spelling has been adopted in order
to preserve a mark of the different origin of these two letters. Zu and dzu are also often confounded, especially by natives of Yedo.

_T, D._—The pronunciation of these letters differs slightly from the English sounds. In English the tip of the tongue touches the palate; in forming the Japanese sounds it is pressed more forward against the teeth.

_H, F._—In the Yedo language the pronunciation of these letters resembles the English, except that in producing the Japanese sound represented by _f_, the under lip does not touch the upper teeth, but only approaches them, the result being a kind of strongly aspirated _wh_. In the west of Japan all this series of aspirates is pronounced _f_, not _h_. _Hizen_ is called _Fizen_; _Hirado_, _Firando_, and so on. In the vulgar Yedo dialect _hi_ is almost undistinguishable from _shi._

_R._—Especially before _i_, _r_ differs considerably from the English sound. The true pronunciation can only be learnt from a native of Japan.*

The pronunciation of combinations of Japanese letters in some cases differs considerably from that of the letters taken separately, and in order to be able to read Japanese books as they are read by the Japanese themselves, it is necessary to know not only the sound of each letter when taken separately, but also the changes which its pronunciation undergoes in these cases.

_Au, afu, ou, ofu oo, oho_, and _owo_ are pronounced _o_; and _eu, efu, co_, and _eho_ are pronounced _i_o_ or _yo_. Thus _sofu_, (to associate) is pronounced _s_o_; _Ohosaka_ is read _Osaka_; _sen-sou_ (a battle) is pronounced _sen-so_; _efu_ (to get drunk), _yo_, and so on.

* The Japanese _r_ is a medial, and not an aspirate. It is formed in the same way as _d_, except that the tip of the tongue touches the roof of the mouth further back than in pronouncing that letter. Some Japanese make it almost _j_.

---

* The Japanese _r_ is a medial, and not an aspirate. It is formed in the same way as _d_, except that the tip of the tongue touches the roof of the mouth further back than in pronouncing that letter. Some Japanese make it almost _j_.

---
The latter part of this rule is in reality only a particular case of the former. In Japanese etymology, e is equal to $i + a$. 

$E_u$ is therefore $i a u$: i.e., by the first part of the rule $i o$ or $y o$. This explains some apparent difficulties in Japanese pronunciation. $T_e u$, for instance, is pronounced $ch o$, $te u$ being equal to $ti a u$, i.e., $ch i o$ or $ch o$, $t$ changing to $ch$ before $i$, and $au$ being contracted into $o$. A similar analysis will show how it is that $defu$ is pronounced $dj o$; $sefu$, $sh o$; and $heu$, $hiyo$ or $hy o$.

Exception 1: In the terminations of verbs $af u$ of $u$ are by most Japanese read $ai i$ oui.

Exception 2: In some words of native origin, $af u$ and $of u$ are pronounced as written, for example—afur eru, to overflow; hofuru, to slaughter.

$U$.—In pronouncing Chinese compounds, the first part of which ends with the letter ku, and the second begins with k, the u is lost, as in moku-kon, which is read mokkon. The vowels of the syllables tsu and chi are lost before a t following. Chi is in such cases written tsu, as in motsute (pronounced motte) for mochite.

$G$.—At the beginning of a word, $g$ is the English $g$ hard, but when it comes after other letters it has, in the Yedo dialect, the sound of ng in ring, as in Nagasaki, which is pronounced Na-nga-saki. In the genitive particle ga, $g$ has also this sound. In the western dialect, $g$ is in all cases the English $g$ hard.

$T s u$.—In modern Japanese and in Chinese words, tsu, except when it begins a word, is usually assimilated in pronunciation to a k, s, or p following. Thus shitsu-so is read shisso; satsu-shari, sasshari; shitsu-kin, shukkin; Nitsu-pon, Nippon, &c. This has caused tsu to become regarded as a mere phonetic sign of the doubling of a letter, and it is not unfrequently used by modern writers when the doubling has resulted from the assimilation of other letters.
than *tsu*. Thus, *tattobu* is written *tatsu-tobu*, instead of *tafu-tobu*; *hossuru* is written *hotsu-suru*, instead of *hori-suru*. In Hiragana texts a Katakana *tsu* is occasionally used for the same purpose. Something of the kind is needed, for it is often difficult to determine whether the *tsu* has its proper sound or is assimilated to the following letters. The only rule which can be given is that *tsu* is usually assimilated in Chinese words and in the most modern form of Japanese, but not in the older language.

_H, F._—Except at the beginning of a word, the aspirates *h* and *f* are lost in pronunciation. *Ha* becomes *wa*; *hi, i; fu, u*; *he, e*; and *ho, o*. It is this loss of the aspirate which enables _fu_ and _ho_ to form a crasis with the preceding vowel, as shown above.

The particle _ha_ is pronounced _wa_, and _he, e_, as they are considered to form part of the word to which they are joined.

The aspirates are sometimes omitted even in writing. Thus we find _in_ for _ifu, “to say”_; _shinau_ for _shimafu, “to finish.”_ This practice should not be imitated. The old language never has a syllable beginning with a vowel, except at the beginning of a word.

_N._—Before _m, b_, and _p, n_ is pronounced _m_.

---

**TRANSLITERATION.**

In the first edition of this work, the rule adopted in spelling both Chinese and Japanese words in Roman letters was to give as nearly as possible the actual Yedo pronunciation of the entire word, irrespective of its spelling in Japanese kana. This method has been retained in so far as Chinese words are concerned, for in their case nothing is gained in a work like the present by an adherence to the Japanese spelling. In the case of Japanese words, however, the native spelling represents a more ancient pronunciation, and a
knowledge of it is indispensable for etymological purposes. It has therefore been thought advisable, in the present edition, to represent the spelling rather than the pronunciation, and each letter of the Japanese syllabary is consequently in all cases written with the same Roman letters, viz., those placed opposite to it in the foregoing tables. The preceding remarks on the modifications undergone by some letters when combined with others will enable the student to infer the actual pronunciation, and, for example, to read sofu, so; Nagasaki, Na-nga-saki; matsutaku, mattaku, &c.

LETTER CHANGES.

The letter changes which Japanese words have suffered in the course of time have, in the majority of cases, not affected their spelling, which continues, as is so often the case in our own language, to represent the ancient pronunciation. These changes have been pointed out under the head of "Pronunciation," but those of this class which have found their way into the spelling, together with the changes due to the action of euphonic laws in derivation and composition, are still to be noticed.

Changes of Vowels.

Elision.—The u final of adjectives, and of the negative particle zu, is elided before the initial vowel of the verb aru, "to be." Thus, nakare is written for naku are, nagakari for nagaku ari, arazaru for arazu aru.

Other examples of the elision of a vowel are:—

Tari for te ari.
Tarahi, "a wash-hand basin," for te arahi.
Zaru for zo aru.
Kakari for kaku ari.
Sasageru, "to offer," for sashi-ageru.
Nari for ni ari.
Tari for to ari.
Mare for mo are.
Ariso, "a reef," for ara iso.

The vowels of the syllables mi, mu, mo, and ni are often elided, the remaining consonant being then represented by the letter ɔ, which, as above observed, is pronounced n or m, according to the letter which follows it.

Examples:—

Ason, "a noble of the Court," for asomi.
Inbe, a man's name (pronounced Imbe), for Imibe.
On, the honorific particle, for omi.
Kindachi, "nobles," for kimi-tachi.
Kanzashi, a hair ornament, for kamisashi.
Nanji, "you," for namuchi.
Nengoro, "kindly," for nemokoro.
Hingashi, "east," for himukashi.
Ikan, "how," for ikani.

Aphaeresis.—In the older language, a hiatus was inadmissible in the middle of a word. It was therefore necessary, whenever the second part of a compound began with a vowel, either to elide the final vowel of the first part of the compound, as in some of the examples quoted above, or else to remove the initial vowel of the second part. The following are examples of the latter course having been taken:—

Kamutsumari for kamu-atsumari, "an assembly of gods."
Towomari (pronounced tōmari) hitotsu for towō amari hitotsu, "eleven."

Akashi (name of place) for Aka ishi.
Ogata (name of place) for Oagata.

Crasis.—I followed by a becomes e in the termination eri of the perfect, the e being here the result of a crasis of the i final of the root of the verb, and the initial a of the verb aru,
"to be." An instance of a somewhat similar crasis is nageki "lament," for naga iki (lit. long breath).

An irregular crasis is that of the words to isu, which are sometimes written ten (pronounced chô).

Other Changes of Vowels.

U.—In a few words υ has been introduced in order to give the syllable a fuller sound, as—

Maukeru (pron. môkeru) for makeru, "to provide."
Tauberu (pron. tôberu) for taberu, "to eat."
Yauka (pron. yôka) for yaka, "eight days."
Shikau shite (pron. shikô shite) for shika shite, "thus," "therefore."

An υ of this kind is occasionally introduced into Chinese words. For instance, one pronunciation of 佐 官, usually read sakwan (a clerk in a government office), is sô-kwan, i.e., sau-kwan.

An υ in the old language has not unfrequently become o in the later times, as sodachi, "bringing up," for sudachi; no, "a moor," for nu.

Where the first part of a compound ends in e, this vowel in a considerable number of cases becomes changed into a.

Examples:—

Kana-mono, "a metal fastening"; from kane, "metal."

Saka-mori, "a drinking bout"; from sake, "rice beer," and mori, "to fill."

Da-bi, "a torch"; from te, "the hand," and hi, "fire."

Muna-gi, "a roof tree"; from mune, "the breast," and ki, "a tree."

Manako, "the pupil of the eye"; from me, "the eye," no, the possessive particle, and ko, "a child," "something small."

In a few cases i, in the same position, is changed into o, as konoha, "leaves of trees," for ki no ha; honoho (pron. honô),
“a flame,” for *hi no ho* (lit., “an ear of fire”); *hotaru,* “a fire-fly,” for *hi-taru,* “that which drops from it fire.”

**Attraction.**—The tendency to assimilate the vowels of successive syllables, which is common to the Japanese language with the other branches of the same family, has been termed attraction. In Japanese its action is comparatively limited. The following changes of vowels are probably due to this tendency.

*Shira-ga* “white hair,” for *shira-ke.*

*Otodoshi,* “the year before last,” for *atotoshi.*

*Ago ohokimi,* “my great lord,” for *aga ohokimi.*

The pronunciation of *ou* as *o* (see page 20) is also no doubt due to attraction.

The letters *i* and *u* are closely allied to each other in Japanese. It has been already observed at page 19, that in Yedo the *u* of Chinese words is in many words pronounced *i.* A few Japanese words are spelt indifferently with either letter, as *iwo* or *uwō,* “a fish”; *iroko* or *uroko,* “a fish scale”; *itsukushima* or *utsukushima,* “to love.” The spoken language has *iku* for *yuku,* “to go”; and in some places *ibi* is heard for *yubi,* “a finger;” and *iki* for *yuki,* “snow.”

**Changes of Consonants.**

**Nigori.**—The most familiar change of consonants is the substitution for a pure (*i.e.*, hard) consonant (viz., *k, s, sh, t, ts, ch,* or *h, f*), of the corresponding impure (or soft) consonant (*g, z,* or *j, d,* or *dz,* and *b* or *p*). [See above, page 21.] This occurs when the word beginning with a pure consonant is made the second part of a compound. The introduction of the *nigori* (*i.e.*, impurity) is not universal in such circumstances, and there is much irregularity with regard to it, the same compound being pronounced by some people with the *nigori* and by others without it, as for instance the name of the city Ohosaka, which some pronounce Ôsaka, others Ôzaka.
The following rules will serve as a partial guide to its use.

1. In forming compound verbs, the first element of which is also a verb, the nigori is not introduced. Ex.: Sashi-hasamu, shime-korosu, hiki-toru.


The initial consonant of the second part of the reduplicated plural of nouns (see below, Chap. III.) almost invariably takes the nigori. Ex.: Sama-zama for sama-sama, “all sorts of”; shina-jina for shina-shina, “articles of various kinds”; hito-bito for hito-hito, “men.”

4. Teniwoha suffixed to the perfect and to the negative base take the nigori; those suffixed to other forms do not. Ex.: Yuke-ba, yuka-ba, yuki-te, yuki-shi, yuku-tomo. In the case of compound nouns, whether a consonant takes the nigori or not is greatly determined by euphony. Thus in abura-tsubo, “an oil-bottle,” the nigori is no doubt omitted in order to avoid the ill-sounding combination abura-dzubo. It is also for the sake of euphony that in Japanese words an (n or m) almost always causes the following consonants to take the nigori. Ex.: Kindachi for kimitachi, “nobles”; tsumindo for tsumi-hito, “a criminal”; karonzuru for karomisuru, “to make light of,” “to despise”; fude for fumi-te, “a pen”; himukashi, “east,” which has become first hingashi and then higashi. Chinese words are subject, though to a less extent, to the same tendency. For examples see the list of auxiliary numerals.

The letter p, which is incorrectly described by Japanese
grammarians as the *han-nigori* (half *nigori*) of *h* and *f* is entirely foreign to the older Japanese language. It is only found in Chinese words and in the present spoken dialect of Japanese, in the latter of which cases it is usually the result of the assimilation of a preceding consonant to the initial *h* or *f* of the second part of a compound. Ex.: *Hap-pô* for *hachi-hô*, “on all sides”; *seppuku* for *setsu-fuku*, “disembowelment”; *hitsu-paru* (pron. *hipparu*) for *hiki-haru*, “to pluck”; *tsutsu-pari* (pron. *tsuppari*) for *tsuki-hari*, “a prop.”

In some Japanese words a double *p* seems simply to have taken the place of an older *h* or *f*. Thus, *yahari*, “still,” has been strengthened into *yatsu-pari* (pron. *yappari*); *ma-hira*, “humbly,” into *matsu-pira* (pron. *mappira*).

In Chinese words an *m* or *n* at the end of the first part of a compound has often the effect of changing the initial *h* or *f* of the second part into *p*. Ex.: *Nam-pû*, “an adverse wind,” for *nan-fû*; *mam-puku*, “full stomach,” for *man-fuku*; *dampau*, “a negotiation,” for *dan-han*.

There are a few Japanese words beginning with *p*, but they are all onomatopoetic words of recent origin.

Japanese grammarians maintain that the *nigori* is in all cases the result of some such changes as have been described above, and that it had no existence in the original form of Japanese words; but this opinion can hardly be sustained, in view of the numerous words which begin with *b, d, g, j*, &c., a fact for which they offer no explanation.

**Assimilation of Consonants to succeeding Consonants.**

The most ancient language had no double consonants, and consequently no assimilation. In the stage of the language represented by the *Genji Monogatari* and similar works, there are frequent instances of the assimilation of *r* to an *m* or *n* following, as *arazan nari* for *arazaru nari*, *bekam mereba* for *bekaru mereba*, *sakan-naru* for *sakarinaru*, *kudan no gotoku*
for kudari no gotoku, &c. This $m$ or $n$ is usually written to the right and in Katakana, and it is often dropped altogether, the tendency of the older language being to avoid double consonants. Thus, karina, "a letter," which becomes kanna by the assimilation of the $r$ to the $n$ following, is always written kana.

All other cases of assimilation belong to the latest form of the language. Except in the case of $m$ or $n$, the Japanese syllabaries provide no means of writing double consonants, and recourse has therefore been taken to the rude expedient of writing, instead of the consonant assimilated, the letter in which this change most frequently takes place, viz., tsu. Thus, to show that tafutoki, "august," is to be pronounced tattoki, it is spelt tatsutoki; hori suru, "to wish," is written hotsusuru, in order to show that it is to be read hossuru; kitsu-saki (pron. kissaki), "the point of a sword," is written for kirisaki, and so on.

The Japanese language dislikes to have successive syllables beginning with the same consonant. To this principle are due such forms as

wo ba for wo wa.

arashi for aru rashi.
kerasi for keru rashi.
boshikugi, "a broad-headed nail," for boshi-gugi.
wasuruna, "don't forget," for wasururu na.
minagara, "all," for mina nagara.

The difference between the second and first conjugation of adjectives is no doubt due to the same tendency. In the first conjugation shi is added to the root in order to produce the conclusive form, but as in the second conjugation the root already ends in shi, the same rule, if applied to it, would give a termination shishi. One of these syllables is therefore dropped.
In the more ancient language this tendency extended to double consonants, one of which was usually dropped, as kanna (for kari na), which is always written kana, arazan nari, often written arazanari, &c.; but in the later and spoken forms of the language an opposite tendency may be observed, and many consonants have been doubled apparently for no other purpose than to strengthen the sound of the word to which they belong. Thus, tada has been strengthened into tatsuta (pron. tatta); mataku into matsutaku (pron. mattaku); vahari is sometimes pronounced yappari; mina, minna; minami, minnami, and so on.

K.—There is a tendency in Japanese to drop this letter when it occurs in the middle of a word. The most familiar instance of this is in the spoken language, where k is lost in the terminations of the adverbial and attributive forms of the adjective, hayaku, for example, becoming hayau (pronounced hayö), hayaki, hayai, &c.


H, F.—The aspirates of the syllables ha, hi, fu, he, ho, are often vocalized into u, the vowels of these syllables being at the same time dropped, as in the following examples:—


Hauki (pron. hôki), “a broom,” for ha-haki.

The western spoken form of the past tense of verbs ending in afu is also an instance of this change. In this dialect the termination ahita always becomes óta (in writing, auta) instead of atta, as in the Yedo language. Thus, the past tense of
shimafu, “to finish,” which at Yedo is shimatta, is, in the language of the western provinces, shimôta.*

$M$ and $N$.—ు (m or n) is frequently vocalized into u, as in the following examples:—

Kōjī (pron. kōji), ‘a small road,’ for ko-michi.
Kautsuke (pron. Kôtsuke), name of province, for Kami-tsuke.
Kaube (pron. Kôbe), name of town, for Kami-be.

A familiar example of this change is the $n$ final of the future, which in the spoken language is changed into u, and then forms a crasis with the preceding a, becoming along with it ð.

An ఁ is frequently introduced for the sake of giving a fuller sound.

Ex.: Yokumba, “if good,” for yoku ba.
Akambo, “a baby,” for akabito.
Zennaku, “good and bad,” for zen-aku.

The Hakodate spoken dialect introduces this ఁ very freely.

$M$ and $b$ are closely related in Japanese. Some words are spelt with either indifferently.

Ex.: Samurafu or saburafu, “to attend on.”
Semaki or sebaki, “narrow.”
Kemuri or keburi, “smoke.”
Samishiki or sabishiki, “lonely.”
Himo or hibo, “a cord.”
It should be remembered that the sounds, 'tu, ti, du, di, si, si, and hu do not exist in Japanese, and are represented by tsu, chi, dzu, dji, shi, ji, and fu. Hence the variations which take place in inflecting such a verb as matsu (machi, matsu, mata, mate), and in other cases where these letters are involved, are only apparent, and no change of consonant really takes place.

Some of the preceding remarks on letter-changes are further illustrated in the following list of less obvious derivations.

A FEW DERIVATIONS.

Abumi, "a stirrup"; from ashi, "foot," and fumi, "tread." Cf. agaki for ashi-kaki.

Akatsuki, "dawn"; from aka, a root meaning "clear," "bright," and toki, "time."

Asatsute (pron. asatte), "the day after to-morrow"; fromasu, "to-morrow," and satsute (for sarite), "having passed."

Fuda, "a ticket"; from fumi, "letter" or "writing," and ita, "a board."

Hakama, "trowsers"; from haki, "to draw on," and mo, "clothing."

Harubi, "a girth"; from hara, "belly," and obi, "girdle."

Hotoke, "a deceased person," "a saint," "a god"; from hito, "man," and ke, "spirit."

Idzumi, "a spring"; from idzuru, "to issue," and midzu, "water." Cf. mito, "water-gate."

Ihe, "a house"; from i, root of iru, "to dwell," and he, an old word meaning "place."

Ikada, "a raft"; from uki, "float," and ita, "board."

Inishih, "ancient time"; from ini, root of inuru, "to go away," shi, a particle indicating past time, and he, "place."
Kami, "the upper of the two beams into which the slides are inserted in a Japanese house"; from kami, "above," and i, root of iru, "to dwell."
Koromo, "clothing"; from kiru, "to wear," and mo, "clothing."
Kutsuwa, "a bit"; from kuchi, "mouth," and wa, "ring."
Mahe, "before"; from me, "eye," and he, "place," or "side."
Cf. shirihe, "behind."
Mochi-dzuki, "full moon"; from michi, root of mitsuru, "to be full," and tsuki, "moon."
Mogusa, "tinder"; probably from mohe, root of moyuru, "to burn," and kusa, "herb."
Mukade, "a centipede"; from mukahi, "opposite," and te, "hand."
Nishi, "west," for inishi, i.e., the part where the sun "has gone away."
Nodo or nondo, "throat"; from nomi, "to swallow," and to, "door."
Otodoshi, "the year before last"; from ato, "previous," and toshi, "year."
Ototohi, "the day before yesterday"; from ato, "previous," tsu, genitive particle, and hi, "day."
Suzuri, "an inkstone"; from sumi, "ink," and suru, "to rub."
Tadzuna, "reins"; from te, "hand," and tsuna, "rope."
Taimatsu, "a torch"; from taki, root of taku, "to burn," and matsu, "pine."
Tōtōmi, name of a province; from towo, "far," tsu, genitive particle, and umi, "sea."
Tsugomori, "the last day of the month"; from tsuki, "the moon," and komoru, "to retire."
Tsuitachi, "the first day of the month"; from tsuki, "the moon," and tachi, root of tatsu, "to arise."
Tsumabirakani, "minutely," "fully"; from tsumu, "to cut
short," and hiraku, "to extend." Cf. the phrase, "the short and the long of it."

Yaiba, "sword-edge"; from yaki, root of yaku, "to burn," and ha, "edge."

Yume, "a dream"; from i, a root which appears in inemuru, "to fall asleep," and me, the root of miru, "to see."

The Japanese grammarians have supplied us with etymological appliances far more powerful than any of those described above. They inform us that not only are syllables interchangeable which begin with the same consonant, i.e., those in the same vertical columns of the Table at page 15, but that one syllable may be changed for another if they only contain the same vowel, i.e., the syllables in the horizontal columns of the Table are interchangeable. This is the old maxim that in etymology the consonants count for very little and the vowels for nothing at all, with the difference that with the Japanese etymologists the consonants count for nothing as well as the vowels. With a comprehensive system like this, the gravest difficulties are easily surmounted. Thus, if we want to show that furuki, "old," is derived from wakaki, "young," we have only to run the eye along the columns which contain wa and ka till we come to ha and ra, and then follow the vertical columns in which the latter syllables occur till we find fu and ru, and the demonstration is complete.

This rule is sufficient when the words contain the same number of syllables, but in the case of a redundancy or deficiency in their number, the native grammarians are amply provided for the emergency. By means of jō-riaku (aphaeresis), chiuriaku (elision or contraction), geriaku (apocope), and joji (affixes), the superfluous syllables are promptly removed and additional syllables provided wherever necessary. The following derivations, which are taken from Japanese works on etymology, illustrate the application of these principles:
Mume, "a plum," is derived from utsukushiku medzurashiku, "beautiful—rare," by taking the first syllable of each word and omitting the others by geriaku. This gives ume, but as u and mu belong to the same column, one may be substituted for the other.

Keshi, "a poppy," is derived from hirake, "to open out," and shiroshi, "white," the syllables hira being removed by joriaku, and roshi being taken away by geriaku.

Shitagafu, "to follow," is derived from shita ni tsukite kokoro ni kanafu, the superfluous syllables being removed by chiuriaku.

Neko, "a cat," is from nedzumi konomu, "fond of rats," the first syllable of each word being taken, and the others rejected.

Inu, "a dog," is from inuru, "to go away," because if taken to another place, he "goes away," and comes back to his master.

Akane sasu, a makura-katoba of doubtful meaning, is derived by the Kanjikô from akaki ke, "red vapour," which is first contracted into ake and afterwards lengthened by joji into akane, and sasu, "to strike," "to shoot."

There is yet another system of derivation, by which words which we should be content to consider as roots are traced to fifty original elements corresponding to the fifty sounds of the Japanese syllabary. The following passage, taken from the preface of a Dictionary of Derivations compiled upon this system, will give an idea of its mode of operation.

"All Japanese words have their origin in the nature of the heart. For the heart has fifty modes of action, and consequently man naturally gives utterance to fifty sounds. If in his heart he thinks ah! the sound ah! comes spontaneously to his lips; if in his heart he grunts assent, he naturally utters the sound u; the thought oh! of alarm causes him spontaneously to exclaim oh! and so on with the rest. The combination of these results naturally in words. Thus the
colour aka (red) is so called because it is so radiant (kagayaku) as to make one feel ah; awo (green) has been so termed from its being so plentiful (ohoki) as to make us feel ah!; kane (metal) is so called because it adheres nebari) firmly (kataku) together."

This system, which is not without a grain of truth in it, is aided by a free use of jōriaku, chiuriaku, &c.

The influence of these theories is observable in the writings of even the most eminent Japanese grammarians, and it has therefore been thought desirable to warn the student against them.

ACCENTS.

Accents in Japanese have but little importance for the student either of the spoken or the written language. A competent authority has stated to me that the distinctions of accent described in the passages quoted below are really observed in speaking by the educated classes of Kiōto, but the language of Yedo certainly neglects them, and educated natives of the east of Japan declare that they are unable to discover any difference in the pronunciation of such words as hi, "the sun," hi, "fire," and hi, "a water-pipe"; kaki, "an oyster," and kaki, "a persimmon."

The views of the native grammarians upon this subject will be learnt from the following extract from the San-on-kō, by Motowori Norinaga:—

"In the language of this Empire there are but three accents, viz., *the 平 (or even accent), the ト (or rising accent), and the け (or departing accent). The entering accent (入) is not in use. Hi, 'the sun,' takes the 平 accent; hi, 'a water-pipe,' the ト accent; and hi, 'fire,' the け accent. On the other hand the hi of hinata, 'sunshine,' takes the ト

* 平 is something like the English monotone; ト resembles the rising inflection, and け the falling inflection.
ACCENTS.

accent; the hi of hakehi, 'a kind of water-pipe,' takes the 上去 accent; and the hi of hibashi, 'tongs,' the 上 accent. Yama, 'a mountain,' has the 平 accent, but in such compounds as yamakaze, 'mountain-wind,' and yamamatsu, 'mountain-fir,' yama takes the 上去 accent. Yet in the compounds higashiyama, 'east-mountain,' and nishiyama, 'west-mountain,' yama has the 平 accent. Uji (the name of a district) again is pronounced with the 上去 accent, but in the word Ujikaha, 'the river Uji,' it takes the 上 accent, while in the compound Ujibashi, 'the Uji bridge,' it has the 平 accent.

"In this way all words suffer changes of accent, and if in such cases the original accent were retained, a change of meaning would be the result. Take, for instance, yamakaze and yamamatsu, the examples just quoted. If yama is here pronounced, as in the original word, with the 平 accent, the meaning will be 'mountain and wind,' 'mountain and fir,' and we shall have in each case two objects, and not one. It is owing to the change of accent that the meaning becomes 'the wind of the mountain,' 'the fir of the mountain.'

"But yama is composed of the two syllables ya and ma, kaha of the two syllables ka and ha. If we examine the accent of each syllable separately, we shall see that ya has the 上 accent, ma the 平, ka the 上, and ha the 平 accent. The entire words yama and kaha have nevertheless their own accents, both taking the 平 accent. The same principle applies to polysyllabic words such as himukashi (higashi), 'east,' minami, 'south,' etc. But the attempt to distinguish the accent of each of a number of successive syllables leads to confusion, and no clear results can be obtained. This is due to the intimate connection which exists between the sounds of which a word is composed. There is, however, no uncertainty in deciding the accent of any entire word."

Motowori further says that although in speaking, Chinese words are accented by Japanese, the accents follow the
Japanese system, and have nothing to do with the original Chinese tones.

Kitanobe, author of the *Ayuhishô*, says that there are three accents in Japanese, viz., the *yuki* (going), corresponding to the Chinese 𭌍; the *kaheri* (returning), corresponding to the Chinese 𭁒; and the *tachi* (cutting off), corresponding to the Chinese 𭃳.

The comparison with Chinese shows that in the above remarks, by accent is meant musical intonation, and not a mere emphasis or stress on the word or syllable. In this latter sense the accent of Japanese words is much less marked than in English. It usually falls on the penultimate syllable, but to this rule there are numerous exceptions.
CHAPTER II.

CLASSIFICATION OF WORDS.

Japanese grammarians divide words into three classes, viz.—**Na, Kotoba,** and **Teniwoha.**

This classification accords well with the structure of the Japanese language. It rests on a division of words into principal and subordinate parts of speech, principal words being subdivided into uninflected (*na*) and inflected (*kotoba*). There is, however, no good reason why this subdivision should not be extended to the subordinate parts of speech, viz.—Particles and Terminations or **Teniwoha.** If this be done, we shall have four classes of words, as follows:

I. Uninflected Principal words (*na*).
II. Inflected Principal words (*kotoba*).
III. Uninflected Subordinate words.
IV. Inflected Subordinate words (*teniwoha*).

With this modification the classification of the Japanese grammarians has been adopted in the present treatise.

**Na** means "name," and the class of words so denominated includes the noun, pronoun, numeral adjective, and interjection, together with a number of words, which, although corresponding in meaning to the verbs, adjectives, or adverbs of other languages, are uninflected, and must therefore be reckoned as *na.* **Kotoba** means "word." Under this term are comprised

* In the *Kotoba no Chikamichi,* *na* are called *i-kotoba,* or "words which remain at rest," as opposed to *hataraki-kotoba,* or "words of action," the term which in that treatise has been applied to the *kotoba* of older writers. By "rest" and "action" are here meant "want of inflection" and "inflection," and *hataraki,* "working," or "action," has no reference to the usual meaning of verbs as expressing action.
verbs and adjectives. The word *teniwoha* is nothing more than four of the commonest particles, viz. *te, ni, wo, and ha*, united so as to form one word. Under this designation are included particles and prepositions, together with the suffixes attached to verbs and adjectives.

*Teniwoha.*—The aspirate of *ha* is sounded in pronouncing this word.
CHAPTER III.

UNINFLECTED PRINCIPAL WORDS.

In this class of words are included the noun, pronoun, and numeral adjective of European grammars, together with some classes of words which it is convenient to render in English by other parts of speech, such as verbs, adjectives, or adverbs. Cases of this last kind are especially numerous among words of Chinese origin, all of which are uninflected, and must therefore be taken to belong to this class, by whatever parts of speech it may be convenient to translate them in English. Thus *ima*, "now," is really a noun, as its derivation shows. It is compounded of *i*, the root of *iru*, "to be present," and *ma*, "a space," the literal meaning being "the present space." *Koko*, "here," is also a noun, as is shown by its allowing the case-signs *no, ni, &c.*, to be appended to it. Such Chinese words as *shinjō*, "to offer respectfully," *goran*, "look," although often used alone, require some such verb as *nasaru* or *suru*, "to do," to be understood in order to make the sentence grammatically complete, and are therefore really nouns. The most common case of this kind is where a Chinese or Japanese uninflected word is combined with the verb *naru*, "to be," or with the particle *ni*, "in," to form a phrase equivalent to our adjective or adverb, the word being seldom or never used, except in one of these combinations. Thus, *kirei naru* is used as equivalent to our adjective "pretty"; *kirei ni*, to the adverb "prettily"; *shidzuka naru*, to our adjective "quiet"; *shidzuka ni*, to the adverb "quietly." These phrases are only substitutes for adjectives and adverbs, and must not be confounded with them. The true adjective is an inflected word (the adverb being one of its inflected forms), as may be seen by referring to the Table at the beginning of Chapter IV.
Words of this class have, properly speaking, no declension. The distinctions of gender, number, and case are indicated by means of certain particles placed before or after the words, which themselves suffer no change.

THE NOUN.

Nouns may be divided into Simple, Derived, and Compound nouns. Simple or Underived nouns require no remark.

DERIVED NOUNS.

Roots of Verbs.—The roots of verbs often become nouns without any change of form. Thus chiri, root of chiru, "to become scattered," is also used as a noun meaning "litter," "rubbish"; uchi, "a stroke," is the root of the verb utsu, "to strike"; kakitsuke, "a writing," is the root of the verb kakitsukeru, "to note down"; hiraki, "a door with hinges," is the root of the verb hiraku, "to throw open."

Those abstract nouns which seem as if they were formed by adding the syllable mi to adjectival roots really belong to this class. Thus takami, "height," which contains taka, the root of the adjective takaki, "high," is the root of a verb takamu, "to be high"; hayami, "speed," is the root of a verb hayamau, "to be quick." In the old literature these nouns still retain enough of their original force as verbal roots to take before them the particle wo, the sign of the objective case, as in the following examples:—

Akagoma ga agaki wo hayami. The speed of foot of my bay horse.
Miyako wo tohomi. Its distance from the capital.
Yama wo ohomi. A plenty of mountains.

Some of these nouns in mi, like the English abstract words "height," "depth," are also susceptible of a concrete signifi-
cation. Thus, *fukami* may mean "a deep place" as well as "depth" in the abstract; *takami* may mean not only "height," but "an elevation," "a hill."

**Roots of Adjectives.**—The roots of adjectives are occasionally used as nouns, as in the phrase *shiro no jōfu*, "white cloth of first quality."

A few abstract nouns are formed from the roots of adjectives by changing the final vowel of the root into *e*, as *ake*, "redness," from *akaki*, "red"; *kure*, "darkness," from *kuraki*, "dark"; *take*, "length," "a height," from *takaki*, "high."

*Sa.*—The abstract nouns formed by adding *sa* to the roots of adjectives constitute a large class. It is to be observed that these nouns express not so much the quality denoted by the adjective as the degree of the quality. *Takasa*, for instance, is rather "highness" than "height"; *ohokisa* is "the degree of bigness," *i.e.,* "the size," rather than the mere quality of largeness in itself.

**Examples:**

*Akasa*, "redness," from *akaki*, "red."
*Nigasa*, "bitterness," from *nigaki*, "bitter."
*Atsusa*, "thickness" or "hotness," from *atsuki*, "thick" or "hot."
*Shirosa*, "whiteness," from *shiroki*, "white."

In the old language nouns are formed in one or two cases by adding this termination to the roots of verbs, as *kahesa*, "return," from *kaheru*, "to return."

*Ra.*—A few abstract nouns are formed by adding *ra* to adjectival roots, as *wabishira*, "misery," from *wabishiki*, "miserable."

*Ge, Ke.*—Abstract nouns are also formed from *na* (uninflected words) and from verbal or adjectival roots by the addition of the syllable *ge* or *ke*, which is identical with *ki*, "spirit." Derivative words of this class are of very frequent occurrence in the ancient *monogatari.*
Examples:—

*Nanige* (in the phrase *nanige naku*, “as if nothing were the matter”), from *nani*, “what.”

*Midzuke*, “moisture,” from *midzu*, “water.”

*Aburake*, “oiliness” or “greasiness,” from *abura*, “oil.”

*Nige* (in the phrase *nige naki*, “incomparable”), from *niru*, “to be like.”

*Hitoge* (in the phrase *hitoge naki*, “lonely”), from *hito*, “a man.”

*Tsuyoge*, “an appearance of strength,” from *tsuyoki*, “strong.”

*Abunage*, “an appearance of danger,” from *abunaki*, “dangerous.”

*Wadzurahashige*, “an appearance of troublesomeness,” from *wadzurahashiki*, “troublesome.”

These nouns are often used in combination with *naru* as the equivalents of adjectives, or with *ni* added, instead of adverbs.

Examples:—

*Mukutsuge naru*, “hideous.”

*Rikõge ni*, “plausibly.”

*Iyashige ni*, “meanly.”

*Ka.*—The uninflected words derived from other uninflected words, or from the roots of verbs or adjectives by adding one of the terminations *ka, yaka, yoka, raka, haka, saka, soka,* or *bika* are of the class described at page 41 as always found combined with the verb *naru*, “to be,” to form phrases equivalent to adjectives, or with *ni* added as equivalents of adverbs. The *ka* which appears in all these terminations is no doubt identical with the *ke* or *ge* of the preceding paragraph, but the remaining syllables cannot be so readily explained. *Ra* is perhaps the *ra* used to form abstract nouns from adjectives, and *bi* another form of the termination *mi*, which has a similar force. These words are mostly descrip-
tive of outward appearance, and they often correspond to English derivatives in ful, y, or ly.

Examples:

Shidzu-ka naru, "quiet."
Shidzu-ka ni, "quietly."
Nodo-ka naru, "gentle."
Waka-yaka naru, "youthful."
Taka-yaka ni, "loudly"; "with a loud voice."
Nihohi-yaka naru, "having a blooming appearance."
Hana-yaka naru, "gay-looking."
Koma-yaka naru, "minute."
Tama-saka ni, "by a rare chance."
Yabu-saka naru, "stingy."
Nayo-bika naru, "graceful."
Nada-raka naru, "gentle" (of an acclivity).
Niku-raka naru, "hateful."
Oro-soka ni, "coarsely"; "without taking pains."
Ate-haka naru, "noble-looking."
Makotoshi-yaka ni, "with an air of truth."
Aza-yaka ni, "clearly"; "distinctly."

Compound nouns may consist—
1st. Of two nouns, as kazaguruma, "a toy windmill"; from kaze, "wind," and kuruma, a "wheel or mill"; kahabata, a "river-side," from kaha, a "river," and hata, "a side."

2nd. Of the root of an adjective followed by a noun, as kurotabo, a "negro," from kuro, root of kuroki, "black," and hito, "a man"; akagane, "copper," from aka, root of akaki, "red," and kane, "metal."

3rd. Of a noun followed by the root of an adjective, as tomobuto, "big stern" (a kind of boat), from tomo, "the stern," and futo, root of futoki, "thick."

4th. Of the root of a verb and a noun, as norimagwono, "a travelling chair," from nori, root of noru, "to ride," and mono, "a thing."
5th. Of a noun and the root of a verb, as monoshiri, "a scholar," from mono, "a thing," and shiri, root of shiru, "to know"; midzuire, "a water-holder," from midzu, "water," and ire, root of iruru, "to put in."

In compounds the first element may qualify the second, as ita-do, "a plank door"; shō-shō, "a general of the third rank"; or in Chinese words may govern it, as kai-san, "founding a temple"; ke-shin, "transformation"; or may be governed by it, as hi-kaki, "a poker"; sake-nomi, "a drunkard"; or they may be joined by "and" understood, as him-puku, "poverty and riches"; jō-ge, "going up and coming down"; de-iri, "going out and coming in." In Chinese compounds two elements of the same or similar meaning are often combined for the sake of emphasis or comprehensiveness, as kai-sei, "reforming"; kon-zatsu, "confusion."

Hybrid Compounds (compounds of which one element is of Chinese and the other of Japanese origin) are much commoner in Japanese than in European languages.

Examples:—Jiu-bako, "a nest of boxes made to pile up one on the top of another," from jiu, a Chinese word meaning "to pile up," and hako, the Japanese word for "box"; obohe-chō, "a note-book"; haretsu-dama, "a bomb-shell"; jō-bukuro, "an envelope."

HONORIFIC PREFIXES.

Mi, ohomi, omi, ohon, on, o.—Nouns with one of these honorific words prefixed are of the nature of compounds.

Mi means "august," "imperial," and is usually rendered by the Chinese character 御. It is generally, although not exclusively, found before words relating to the Mikado or to the kami (gods of the Shintō mythology), as mi-ko, "a prince"; mi-ya, "a shrine of a kami"; mi-su, "the transparent screen formerly hung before the Mikado on public occasions"; mi-ne, "the top of a mountain."
Ohomi is composed of oho, the root of ohoki, "great," and the mi just noticed. Omi, ohon, on, and o are abbreviated forms of it. Ohomi and omi are only found in the old language, the modern language preferring the form on. Omi, however, is still used in the spoken language prefixed to one or two words, as omi ashi, "the honorable legs." O is almost entirely confined to the spoken language, where it is exceedingly common.

All these words are prefixed to Japanese words only, except o, which is found joined to a few Chinese words, as o rusu, "your absence"; o yaku-sho, "the honorable office"; o taku, "the honorable house," i.e., "your house." Mi is also found prefixed to Chinese words, as mi biōbu, "the honorable screen," but this is extremely rare.

Examples of ohomi, &c.:

Ohomi-yuki, "an imperial progress."
Ohomi-obi, "the honorable girdle."
Ohon-gami, "the great and august god."

I know not in what (Emperor's) honorable time it was.

Although I have no fish to offer you.

I beseech you to tell me your name.

Accompanying the Princess.

The Mikado shedding tears.

The Mikado's ailment.

Before words of Chinese origin are prefixed the honorific words go or gio, as in go-sho, "the honorable place," i.e., "the palace"; ki, as in ki-koku, "the honorable country," i.e., "your country"; son (before the relations of the person
HONORIFIC PREFIXES.

addressed), as in son-pu (pron. som), "the honorable father," i.e., "your father."
Go occasionally appears before Japanese words, as go motsutomo, "you are right."

HUMBLE PREFIXES.

Humble prefixes are found with Chinese words only. They are—

Gu, as in gu-sai, "the stupid wife," i.e., "my wife."
Setsu, as in setsu-bo, "the awkward mother," i.e., "my mother."
Sen, as in sen-zoku, "the mean family," i.e., "my family."
Shō, as in shō-jo, "the little woman," i.e., "my daughter."
Hi, as in hi-ka, "the rough, rustic house," i.e., "my house."

GENDER.

In the class of compound nouns should also be included nouns with one of the words wo, "male," or me, "female," prefixed. An n is sometimes inserted for the sake of euphony.
Examples:—

MASCULINE.

Wo-uma, "a horse."
Wo-jika, "a stag."
Won-dori, "a cock."

FEMININE.

Me-uma, "a mare."
Me-jika, "a hind."
Men-dori, "a hen."

W is not pronounced in these words.
W'o and me are combined with Japanese words only.

NUMBER.

Under the head of compounds there remains to be noticed a kind of plural formed in the case of a few nouns by a repetition of the word. Except in the ancient literature, these forms have never exactly the same force as the plurals of European languages, nor is their meaning precisely the same in every case. "Every," "all kinds of," before the noun, are the most usual renderings.
Examples:—

Kuni, "a country"; kuniguni, "every country."
Hito, "a man"; hitobito, "all sorts of men."
Tokoro, "a place"; tokorodokoro, "various places."
Toki, "a time"; tokidoki, "sometimes."
Tabi, "a time"; tabitabi, "time after time"—"often."
Shina, "an article"; shinajina, "all kinds of articles"—"an assortment."

In almost every case the first letter of the second part of these compounds takes the nigori, if it be a letter which admits of it.

PRONOUNS.

The distinction of person which holds so prominent a place in the Aryan languages has little place in Japanese. The verb has no grammatical inflections to indicate person, and although there are words which correspond in meaning to the personal pronouns of other languages, their grammar is the same as that of nouns, and the idea of placing them in a separate class has not even suggested itself to the native grammarians.

The use of personal pronouns is much more restricted in Japanese than in English. As in Latin and Greek, they are used not as mere signs of the person of the verb, but in order to prevent ambiguity, or in cases where there is an emphasis upon them. Thus, "I will go," "He does not know," are in Japanese simply yukan, shirazu. But where the pronouns are emphasized, as in the following sentence, they must be expressed in Japanese.

Kowomina naraba, waga ko ni sen; wonoko naraba, nanji yumiyatori ni nashi-tateyo.

If the child is a girl, I will make it my child; if it is a boy, do you educate him for a soldier.

Where personal pronouns are wanting, the person of the
verb may usually be inferred from the presence of honorific forms indicating the second person, or of humble forms showing that the first person is meant.

The various modes of indicating the plural are but rarely had recourse to in the case of other uninflected words, but with pronouns it is the rule to employ the reduplicated form, or to add one of the plural affixes when two or more persons or things are meant.

**PERSONAL PRONOUNS OF THE FIRST PERSON.**

1. — *Japanese Words.*

*A, wa, are, ware, waro.* — The most ancient Japanese word for “I” is *a* or *wa*. Both these forms are of frequent occurrence in the *Manyōshū*, but they have become obsolete in the later forms of the language.

Examples:—

*Wa wo matsu tsubaki.*

*A wo matsu to*
  *Kimi ga nure-ken*
  *Ashibiki no*
  *Yama no shidzuku ni*
  *Naramashi mono wo.*

The camellia which awaits me.

Oh, that I could become changed into the drippings from the mountain toilsome to the feet, with which thou hast doubtless been wetted while waiting for me!

*Ago (for aga) ohokimi,* “my great lord.”

When followed by the possessive particle *ga, wa* is still in use.

Examples:—

*Waga kimi,* “my lord.”
*Waga ko,* “my child.”
*Waga tomogara,* “my companions” (used in the sense of “we”).
*Waga atsurahe yarishi sakadzuki,* “the wine cup which I ordered from you.”
PRONOUNS.

Waga has also the meaning “one’s own.” Waga ko, for instance, may mean “his or her own child” as well as “my child.” Wa nami is properly a plural, but it is often used as a singular.

Are, another obsolete word for “I,” is a with the syllable re, which is also found in sore, kare, tare, &c.

Ware (plural* warera, wareware, or waredomo) is formed by adding the re just mentioned to wa, “I.” It is the most general word for the pronoun of the first person, and is found in the most ancient as well as in the latest forms of the language. It is occasionally heard in the spoken language in the plural form warera, which is used towards inferiors as a pronoun of the second person plural equivalent to orera. In the modern epistolary style, warera is used for “I” in addressing inferiors. Instead of ware no and ware ga, waga is used.

Examples of ware:—

Ware nakaran ato nari tomo. Even after I am dead.
Ware ni yoki hakarigoto ari. I have got a good plan.
Ware kahiri kitaru made, You must wait here till I return.
kokoni arite matsubeshi.
Ware-ware ha Hida no kuni We are artisans of the pro-
naru takumi nari. vince of Hida.

Waro is an obsolete word for “I.” It seems to be only a variation of ware.

Watakushi.—As a pronoun, watakushi belongs to the spoken language, and to modern epistolary correspondence, where it is the commonest word for “I.” Watakushi gi (thing) and watakushi kata (side) are also used. In the literary language watakushi means “selfishness,” “that which is private or personal.” Its derivation is doubtful.

* The editorial “we” is ware hito, “I and man,” and sometimes waga hai, or waga tomogara.
Maro.—Maro is used chiefly, although not invariably, to inferiors, or to persons with whom one is on terms of close intimacy. It has much the same force as the ore or washi of the spoken language. Towards persons with whom one is not on familiar terms, maro is a haughty word for “I.” The author of the Makura Zōshi remarks that the Court nobles, in addressing the Mikado, should not say maro for “I,” but should use their own names instead.

In the Tosa Nikki a child says,—“Maro kono uta no kaheshisen,” “I will compose a reply to this verse of poetry.” In one of Motowori’s works he says: “Aru hito tohite ihaku,” “Uta to ha ikanaru mono wo ifu zo ya?” “Maro kotahete ihaku.” “A certain person asked of me, ‘How do you define poetry?’ and I answered…….”

The Mikado and persons of high rank are in books made to use maro towards inferiors, as Maro no yo ni, “in my reign.” It is little used in the modern written language.

Waraha (literally, “the child”), corresponding to the Chinese 女 (shō), is only used by women. Ex.: Waraha wo mo ite yuki tamahe, “take me with you, too.”

Onore (plural onorera) is properly of no person. It means “self,” “oneself,” and may be used indifferently for “myself,” “yourself,” “herself,” and “himself.” In practice, however, it is so little different from “I” that a place has been given it among the pronouns of the first person.

In the spoken language, onore is usually of the second person, and is a contemptuous word oftenest heard along with abusive language.

Examples of onore:—

Ima onore misute-tatematsu-raba, ikade yo ni ohasen? If you should now abandon me, how could I exist in the world?
Onore kimi no kokoro yoku shirinu. I have well known your heart.
Onore ga chichi no tokui nari. He is a customer of my father's.
Onore hitori makaran to ihite. Saying "I will go myself, alone."

Mi, midomo, midzukara. — Mi literally means "body," "person," and hence "self," but like onore it is often used as a pronoun of the first person. Waga mi has the same meaning as mi. The derived form midzukara is, however, commoner. It is formed by adding to mi the genitive particle tsu, and the kara which also appears in nagara, mono kara, &c. Midzukara means "by or of oneself," "by or of myself."

Midomo is used in the spoken dialect by persons of the samurai class for the singular and plural indiscriminately.

Name of the speaker used instead of the pronoun of the first person.—Both in speaking and in writing, the name (the nanori, or if the speaker or writer has no nanori, the na) is often used instead of "I."

Examples:

Chikuzen mairite sono mukashi no kotodomo hito-bito ni ka-tarahi haberi-shikaba. After (I) Chikuzen came and related to them all the things that had taken place previously to that.

Norinaga anzuru ni. In Norinaga's opinion [i.e., in my opinion].

Soregashi.—Soregashi properly means "a certain person," "somebody," but it is generally used in the sense of "I."

It is peculiar to the written language.

Example:

Soregashi ga me no nihaka ni naku narite haberera. Inasmuch as my eyes were suddenly destroyed.
Yatsugare is a humble form of expression, equivalent to the Chinese boku (僕). It is not in use in the spoken language, nor in the earlier written language.

2.—Chinese Words.

Chin 脫 is the word used by the Mikado in his official character. It corresponds to the ‘we’ of European sovereigns.

Shin 臣 (plural shin-ra) is the converse of chin. It is the word used in petitions and memorials to government, or to persons in authority. In China this character is only used by officials of the highest rank, but in Japan all classes employ it. It is often preceded by the character gu 愚, "stupid."

Yo 余 (plural yora), is peculiar to the written language. It may be used to superiors, inferiors, or equals.

Sessha 拙者, “the awkward person” (plural sesshadomo), is the word used for “I” in the official epistolary style when addressing equals. It is not altogether unknown in the colloquial language, but in speaking it is rather a formal word. In Aidzu it is commonly used for watakushi. Setsu, the sound of 拙, the first of the two characters for sessha, is also in use in the spoken language, as in the phrase setsu mron ni ha, “in my poor opinion.”

Boku 僕, “servant,” is a humble word. It corresponds to the Japanese yatsugare, which, indeed, was probably intended as a translation of boku. Boku also belongs to the spoken language.

Gu 愚 also implies humility. It is confined to the written language.

Examples:—

Gu ga senken hakushiki wo mochite. With my despicable views and slender intelligence.

Gu ikko no shonin to ihe-domo— I am nothing but a poor merchant, but—
Shô, "handmaiden, concubine," is a word used by women in addressing superiors.

The modern epistolary style has numerous other words, mostly of Chinese origin, for the pronoun of the first person, such as—

Ge-setsu, "the mean and awkward person"; gu-setsu, "the stupid and awkward person"; ya-fu, "the rustic, the clown"; gu-tei, "the stupid younger brother"; set-tei, "the awkward younger brother"; fu-pei, "the simple one"; fu-shô, "the silly person"; hi-sei, "the clownish student"; ro-sei, "the ignorant vulgar student"; shô-sei, "the small or inferior student."

The student will probably find that among the numerous words for "I," ware, waga for the book style, sessha for official letters, and watakushi for private letters, will be sufficient for all his requirements.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS OF THE SECOND PERSON.

I.—Japanese Words.

Na or nare (cf. wa, ware) is the word used for the pronoun of the second person in the oldest form of the Japanese language. It occurs frequently in the Kojiki and Manyôshû, but has now been long obsolete. The Loochôo language still preserves it.

The Wakun-shiwoi looks upon it as identical with na, "name," but it is better to consider it as the original pronoun of the second person.

Ex.: Na to a to, "you and I." (Kojiki.)

Nanji (plural nanjira) is derived by Japanese grammarians from na, "a name," and mochi, root of motsu, "to possess." Its original meaning is, therefore, "the name possessor,"—"the famous person." This derivation is confirmed by the fact that a form ohonanji, or ohonamuchi, is found in old books as the name of a god.
Nanji is perhaps the commonest word for the pronoun of the second person in the book style. It is the word used to translate the Chinese 汝 and the English "thou," which latter it very much resembles in force. In the later literary language it usually indicates that the person addressed is the speaker's inferior. Nanji is not used in the epistolary style or in the spoken language.

Examples:—

Nanji gunji wo ba ika narumono to omofu?

What sort of a person do you think a district magistrate is? [Said by a magistrate to a person who has been disrespectful to him.]

Nanji osoruru koto nakare.

Be not thou afraid.

Nanjira hisokani fit-fit to narite.

Ye having become secretly man and wife. [A judge addressing criminals.]

Mikado "Kore ha nanji ga tsukureru mi hotoke ni ya" to tohase-tamafu.

The Mikado asked, "Is this an image made by you?"

Imashi, mimashi, or mashi is an old word for "you." It resembles nanji in its force and application.

Kimi, "lord," is used towards persons not differing greatly in rank from oneself. The Shôsoko Bunrei says that in spite of its literal signification, kimi is not a sufficiently respectful term to use in addressing one's own lord. In poetry it is the commonest word for "you." In the spoken language persons of the educated class sometimes address each other as kimi.

Wa-gimi, "my lord," is also found.

Example:—

Wagimi kudarase-tamafu ha saihai nari, "it is fortunate that you have come down" (from Kiôto).

Omahe or onmahe (pron. ommaye: plural omahe gata or
PRONOUNS.

Omahe tachi), onmahe sama, otemahe.—Omahe or onmahe is composed of o or on, abbreviations of the honorific word ohoni, and mahe, "before." The meaning is therefore "the honourable presence." Omahe is, in writing, a highly respectful word—more so than kimi—and is used to superiors; but in the spoken language, where it is very common, it is only used towards inferiors, or to persons with whom one is on very familiar terms.

Omahe is seldom or never met with in the modern written language, but the derived form onmahe sama is a common word for "you" in letters written by women of the lower class.

Otemahe belongs to the epistolary style. It is used towards inferiors, and is also met with in the spoken language.

Nushi (plural nushi-tachi), wa-nushi, o nushi.—Nushi is literally "master." As a personal pronoun, it is only used to inferiors. It is also found in the spoken language. Wa-nushi, literally "my master," and o nushi, "the honorable master," do not differ from nushi.

Example:—

Wanushi wo mo umitari, "I gave birth to you also."

Soko (literally "that place," from so, root of sore, "that," and ko, an old word meaning "place"), with the allied words soko-moto or sono-moto, "that quarter," sonata (for sono kata), "that side," and sono hō (hō being Chinese for kata, "side"), are used towards persons of inferior station to oneself. They form their plurals by adding tachi.

Sono hō is the word with which a criminal's sentence begins.

Examples of soko, &c.:—

Soko wo ba ika bakari ka ha omohi kikoeshi.

How much did I think about you? [i.e., Do you imagine I thought of you?]

Sokotachi no ifu tokoro koko-rogurushikereba — saraba yukiten.

As what you say makes me sorry for you—well then, I will go.

F 2
Soko wo machi-tamafu koto
hisashi.

Sono hō gi, shiri wo in to
hosshi,—

Their waiting for you has
been long.

You, in the desire to aim at
your own selfish advan-
tage,—

On-mi (pron. onmi), composed of the honorific word on
and mi, “body,” “person,” is a respectful word for “you,”
common in the later book style.

On-mi idzuku wo sashite yukase-tamafu? “whither are you
going?”

O koto also belongs to the later book style, as okoto ga
senaka ni oharete, “borne on your back.” In this sentence
the speaker is a mother addressing her grown-up son.

Mauto (pron. mōto), from ma, “correct,” “just,” and hito,
“a man,” is only used towards inferiors, as for instance by
a noble to his retainers. The following example is from the
Genji Monogatari:—

Kono anegimi ya mauto no nochi no oya? This elder sister
is then your second parent?

Koyatsu, or koitsu, lit. “this fellow,” is an extremely con-
temptuous word.

Ki-sama is a hybrid word composed of the Chinese
honorific prefix ki, “noble,” and the Japanese word
sama, “sir.” Kisama occurs frequently in the modern epis-
tolary style, and although not employed in addressing
superiors, is by no means an impolite word. In the spoken
language it is a contemptuous or familiar expression.

Anata, in the sense of “you,” does not belong to the written
language.

2.—Chinese Words.

Kak-ka, Ki-ka. These are the principal words for “you”
in the modern official epistolary style. Kak-ka is considered
as equivalent to “Your Excellency,” and is used in addressing
PRONOUNS.

Ministers of State, nobles, the Foreign Representatives, and other persons of similar rank. *Ki-ka* indicates much the same rank as "Esquire." It is the word used to Foreign Consuls, the principal local authorities at the open ports, the secretaries in the public departments, &c. *Kak-ka* and *ki-ka* are also placed after the name in writing the address, as *E-koku Kōshi Kak-ka*, "His Excellency the British Minister."

*Hei-ka, Den-ka.* In the same way *Hei-ka* (Your Majesty) is used in addressing the Emperor, and *Den-ka* (Your Highness) towards Princes of the Imperial family, and formerly to the Taikun, as *Tennō Heika*, "His Majesty the Tennō"; *Taikun Denka*, "His Highness the Taikun."

*Sok-ka* is also much used in the official epistolary style. It is a moderately respectful word.

In private letters, *ki-kun, son-kun,* or *son-kō* may be used to equals or superiors, and *ki-den,* or *ki-jō,* to inferiors.

*Go-zen* is the pronunciation of the Chinese characters by which *omahe* is written. It is, like *omahe,* a respectful word. *Go-zen* belongs to the book style. *Go-hen* (plural *go-hen ra*) is the Chinese equivalent of *mauto,* and, like it, is only used towards inferiors.

The student will probably find that *narji* for the book style, *kak-ka, ki-ka* or *sok-ka* for official letters, and *ki-kun* or *ki-den* for private letters will be all that he requires for writing Japanese.

PRONOUNS OF THE THIRD PERSON.

*Ka, kare* (pl. *karera*), *a, are* (pl. *arera*). These words are, properly speaking, the substantive forms of demonstrative pronouns, and mean literally "that person," "that thing." They are, however, used for "he," "she," "it," "they."

At the present time the distinction between *kare* and *are* is that the former is confined to the written language, and the latter to the spoken idiom. In the older language both words are in use, but a difference of meaning is recognized, *kare*
being applied to the less remote, and are to the more remote, of persons or objects not conceived of as immediately present before the speaker or the person addressed. Kare would therefore correspond to the Latin is, and are to ille.

Ka and a are old forms. They are usually followed by the particle ha.

In the written language a and are are much less frequently met with than ka and kare.

Examples:—

Kare ga akugid wo nikumisworkereba. Inasmuch as he hated his evil conduct.

Ka ha to mite wataranu uchi ha—

Seeing that it is she, whilst I do not cross over—

The Japanese are fond of punning on ka ha. Thus in the above sentence it must be taken in two meanings, viz., ka ha, "she," and kaha, "a river."

It cannot be too strongly impressed upon the student that the Japanese language, although so abundantly supplied with personal pronouns, is very sparing in their use. There are often pages and even whole chapters without a single personal pronoun. In writing Japanese it is a good rule never to introduce them except when absolutely necessary for the sense, and always to think first whether one of the numerous honorific or humble words or forms will not serve the purpose. These remarks apply equally to the spoken language.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Root and Archaic Form</th>
<th>Substantive Form</th>
<th>Adj, Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>*Ko,</td>
<td>kore (pl. korera),</td>
<td>kono,</td>
<td>this.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>So,</td>
<td>sore (pl. sorera),</td>
<td>sono,</td>
<td>that.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ka,</td>
<td>kare (pl. karera),</td>
<td>kano,</td>
<td>that.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A,</td>
<td>are (pl. arera),</td>
<td>ano,</td>
<td>that.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Kore and kono correspond to the Italian questo (Latin hic), sore and sono to cotesto (Latin iste), and kare and kano, are and ano, to quello (Latin is, ille).
Ko, kore, kono are said of things conceived to be near, or belonging to the speaker. They may be described as demonstrative pronouns of the first person.

Ko and kore are substantive forms. Ko is only used when followed by one of the particles no, wo, ha, or ya, or in forming compounds, as, for instance, koko, "this place," "here"; ko-toshi, "this year"; ko-yohi, "this evening"; ko-yo-naki, "unsurpassable." In the Kojiki, however, ko is more freely used, and such constructions as ko wo ba are found where the later language would have kore wo ba.

Kono (i.e., ko followed by the genitive particle no) is the adjective form. It should be distinguished from kore no. Kono nedan, for instance, would mean "this price"; kore no nedan, "the price of this."

Examples:—

Ko ya matsu-mushi no koe ni ha aran? Might this be the note of the matsu-mushi?
Ko ha koto-mono no kaha nari. This is the skin of a different animal.
Ito ashiki koto to te, kore kare kikoyu. Making it a very bad thing, he said this and that. [i.e., He made all manner of objections to it.]

So, sore, and sono, "that," are said of persons and things which are regarded as near, or in some way connected with the person addressed. They may be called the demonstrative pronouns of the second person. Sonata (for sono kata, "that side") and soko are actually used as personal pronouns of the second person, and sono is frequently best translated by the English "your." The most common use of sore and sono is where they refer to something which has just been mentioned, it being conceived as present to the mind of the person addressed.
So is seldom found except with one of the particles no, ga, mo, yo, wo, or ha affixed, or in compounds, as soko, sochi.

So and sore are substantives; sono is the adjective form.

The same distinction is to be observed between sono and sore no as between kono and kore no.

Sore is sometimes seen in a detached position at the beginning of a chapter. This is a Chinese idiom, and is confined to the style imitated from translations of Chinese books.

Examples of sore:

Soha shirazu. That I did not know.
Soga ihi-keraku. That which he said.
Tatsu no kubi ni itsu iro ni hikaru tama arī—sore wo torite tamahe. In the dragon's head there is a jewel which shines with five colours; it take and give to me.
Yorite koso sore ka to mo mime. Not until one has approached will one see whether it is that or not.
Sore ni mo yorizu. Without reference to that.
Sono hoka. In addition to that.
Sono koro. At that time.

Ka, kare, and a, are have been noticed as personal pronouns of the third person, but, as already observed, they are really demonstratives. The forms kano and ano are never possessive adjective pronouns, but demonstrative adjective pronouns. In other words, kano and ano (ka and a, with the genitive particle no) mean "that," not "his" or "her," which would be, in Japanese, kare ga or kare no, are ga or are no. Kano is also found in the sense "a certain."

Kare, kano, *are, ano are used of persons or things not

* Are and ano are of rare occurrence in the written language, but in the spoken language they have almost superseded kare and kano.
immediately present. They may be termed demonstrative pronouns of the third person.

*Kare ha nani zo to nan wo- toko ni tohi-keru.*
*Kare ha nani bito zo?*

“What is that?” he asked the man.
What man is he? Who is he?

*Kano hô ni haya kogi-yose yo.*
*Kano hito mo ikani omofu- ran.*
*Kano on tenarahi tori.*

Quickly row to that side.
I wonder what somebody thinks of it.
Taking the copy-book in question.

**INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Root and old subst. form.</th>
<th>Modern subst. form.</th>
<th>Adjective form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Ta</em></td>
<td><em>Tare</em></td>
<td>—</td>
<td>who (written l.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Dare</em></td>
<td>—</td>
<td>who (spoken l.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Na</em></td>
<td><em>Nani</em></td>
<td><em>Nani no</em></td>
<td>what</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Idsu</em></td>
<td><em>Idzure</em></td>
<td><em>Idzure no</em></td>
<td>which (written l.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Dore</em></td>
<td><em>Dono</em></td>
<td>which (spoken l.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Ta, tare, “who.”* The root *ta* is preserved by the old language in the expressions *ta zo*, “who”; *ta ga*, “whose.” The *Kojiki* has *ta ni*, “to whom,” instead of *tare ni*. *Ta, tare* are used of persons only.

*Nani, “what” (plural *nanira*), is used of things only, except in the compound *nani-bito*, “what man,” “who!.” *Nani no*, usually pronounced *nanno*, is the adjective form, as *nani no uma*, “what horse.”

The root of *nani* is probably *na*, the *ni* being originally the preposition “to.” *Nani* is found in the older literature in the sense of “for what,” “to what end.” The root *na* is also found in *naze, nado*, “why.” *Nani* belongs to both the written and the spoken languages.
Idzure, "which," "where," is used both of persons and things. Idzure no is the adjective form. The same root is found in the adverbs idzuko, "where," idzuchi or idzukata, "whither," &c. In the spoken language all these words change idzu into do. Thus idzuko becomes doko; idzuchi, dochi, &c.

Classical Japanese does not recognize the meaning "at any rate," in which the spoken language and later writers often use idzure.

Ika, "what manner," is found in connexion with a few words and particles only, as—

Ika naru, "what manner of."
Ika ni, "in what manner," "how."
Ikade (for ikanite), "how."
Ikaga, "how."
Ikaga no, "what kind of."
Ika-bakari, "how much."
Ika-hodo, "how much."

Iku, "what number," appears in the following combinations:—

Ikutsu, "how many";
Ikura, "how much," or "how many";
Ikumai, "how many" (of flat things);
Ikuka, "how many days";
Ikubaku, "how much";

and also before many nouns, as iku-ki, "how many trees"; iku-haru, "how many springs."

Itsu, "what time," "when," is found alone and also in combination, as itsuka, itsushika, "some time or other"; itsugoro, "when," &c.

Examples of Interrogatives:—

Kono yama no na wo nani to ka mafusu? What is the name of this mountain?
He asked who this woman was.
Be it whichsoever it may.
In whose truth shall I put trust?
Who can he be who inquires?
How shall I know which it is?
When did he come?
What has become of this man?
Whilst sick with anxious thought what she should do.
No number of times being specified. Any number of times.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

The Interrogative Pronouns *tare*, *idzure*, and *nani* become Indefinite Pronouns by the addition of the particles *ka* or *mo*. Thus *tare ka* is Japanese for “somebody,” *nani ka* for “something,” *tare mo* for “anybody,” and *nani mo* for “anything.” *Ka*, however, sometimes only intensifies the interrogatives. When *tare mo* and *nani mo* are followed by negatives, the negative may be joined to them in rendering into English, and the whole translated “nobody,” “nothing.” Thus *tare mo shirazu* is “nobody knows”; *nani mo shirazu*, “he knows nothing.”

*Idzuremo idzuremo kaherigoto mihezu.*
*Nanika ito kokoro-uki koto.*
*Iretaru mono nanimo kōbashiki mono nashi.*
Other words used as Indefinite Pronouns are:—

_Hito._—This word literally means “man,” and is used in a similar way to the French “on” or the English “one,” “people.” It may also mean “other people” (French _autrui_).

Examples:—

_Hito no uwasa shichi jiu nichi nari._ The talk of the world is for seventy days.

_Hito no kuni he makari-keri._ He went away to a foreign country.

_Mina hito._ Everybody.

_Hito wo hito to mo sezu._ He does not look on people as human beings.

_Soregashi_ originally meant a “certain person,” “somebody,” but it has come to be merely a humble way of saying “I.”

_Nanigashi,_ “a certain person,” “somebody,” is used where a person’s name is not known, or is purposely left unindicated.

_Aru hito,_ lit. “an existing man,” is also very commonly used for “somebody.”

_Mina,_ “all,” is used either alone or with a noun. The old language put _mina_ before the noun, as _mina hito,_ “all men”; the later language puts it after, and in fact makes it an adverb qualifying the verb of the sentence.

**DISTRIBUTIVE PRONOUNS.**

_Ono-ono, mei-mei,_ correspond to the English word “each” when used as a substantive. “Each,” as an adjective pronoun, is rendered by _ono-ono no_ or _mei-mei no._ _Mei-mei_ is Chinese.

**REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS.**

_Shí._ The most ancient reflexive pronoun in the Japanese language is _shí,_ “self” or “own.” It occurs frequently in the _Manyōshū,_ but is now entirely obsolete.
Onore is at present the ordinary word for "self," "himself," "herself," "itself," &c. The final syllable re is omitted before the genitive particle ga, as in the phrase ono ga waruki koto "one's own faults." The derivative word onodzukara, "of oneself," is also in use. Dzu is here the genitive particle tsu with the nigori.

Mi and midzukara are synonymous with onore and onodzukara. Mi means "body," hence "person," "self."

Waga is properly a pronoun of the first person, but it is also used in all persons in the sense "one's own," as waga ko "one's own child."

Ji-shin and ji-bun are Chinese words for "self." They belong to the later language.

Examples of reflexive pronouns:—

Onore sakadzuki te ni torite. Taking the wine-cup into his hand himself.
Ame no shita ni onore ni masaru takumi aru to mo zonji-safurahazu. He did not think that under heaven there was any better workman than himself.
Onore to marobi. Rolling over of itself.
Jishin ni mo zenkwai no ata-hazaru wo shiri. He knew himself that it was impossible that he should recover.
Shi ga haha wo toraku wo shirazu. They know not of their own mother's being taken.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

The Japanese language has no relative pronouns, nor indeed relative clauses at all. What is a relative clause in English is in Japanese converted into an attributive clause, and like other attributives, is placed before the noun which it qualifies—viz., the noun which is in English the antecedent of the relative clause. The verb of the relative clause is put
in the attributive form in the Japanese construction. Thus, "the man who comes" is in Japanese _kuru hitting; "the man who came yesterday," _kino koshi hitting. The same construction is found in English in such phrases as "the murdered man" for "the man who was murdered," "the stolen goods" for "the goods which were stolen"; and it is still commoner in German, where it is often applied to long phrases which would inevitably be relative clauses in English.

The same construction is allowable even when the relative in English is not in the nominative, but in one of the oblique cases, as in the following examples:—

**Hana saku yama.**  The mountain _on_ which flowers are unfolding.  
[Lit., the flower-unfolding mountain.]

**Matsu hitting konu mono yuyen.**  Because he comes not whom (I) await.

**Uguhisu no naki-tsuru hana.**  The flowers _amongst_ which the uguisu has just been singing.

**Uwo ohoki kaha.**  A river _in_ which fish are plentiful.

Where in English the verb of the relative clause is in the passive voice, the Japanese language usually prefers a construction with the active verb. Thus, instead of saying "a country which is unknown," they say _shiranu kuni, i.e., "a (people) not know country”; “a man who is called Denkichi” is in Japanese _Denkichi to ifu mono, lit. "a person whom (people) call Denkichi.”

The construction in which the words _tokoro no, “of the place,” are inserted between the noun and the verb, as in the phrase _"kuru tokoro no hitting," “the man of the coming place,” i.e. “the man who comes,” is an imitation of a Chinese idiom,
and is not found in the more ancient literature. The oldest example of it which the present writer has met with occurs in the Tsure-dzure gusa, a work of the fourteenth century. It is sparingly used even at the present time.

Examples of tokoro as a Relative:—

Kirishitan shimumon to ifu ha Nambankoku yori wataru tokoro no jahō nari.

That which we call the Christian religion is an evil doctrine which came over from the country of the southern barbarians (the Portuguese).

Korosu tokoro no tori wo kubi ni kakesasete.

Having caused the birds which he had killed to be hung about his neck.

NUMERALS.

The Japanese language has two series of numerals, one consisting of words of native origin, and one composed of Chinese words.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>JAPANESE</th>
<th>CHINESE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 Hito-tsu</td>
<td>Ichi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Futa-tsu</td>
<td>Ni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Mi-tsu</td>
<td>San</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 Yo-tsu</td>
<td>Shi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 Itsu-tsu</td>
<td>Go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 Mu-tsu</td>
<td>Roku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 Nana-tsu</td>
<td>Shichi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 Ya-tsu</td>
<td>Hachi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 Kokono-tsu</td>
<td>Ku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 Towo</td>
<td>Jiu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 Towo'mari hito-tsu</td>
<td>Jiu-ichi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 Towo'mari futa-tsu</td>
<td>Jiu-ni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13 Towo'mari mi-tsu</td>
<td>Jiu-san</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14 Towo'mari yo-tsu</td>
<td>Jiu-shi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15 Towo'mari itsu-tsu</td>
<td>Jiu-go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JAPANESE</td>
<td>CHINESE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16 Towo'mari mu-tsu</td>
<td>Jiu-roku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17 Towo'mari nana-tsu</td>
<td>Jiu-shichi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18 Towo'mari ya-tsu</td>
<td>Jiu-hachi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19 Towo'mari kokono-tsu</td>
<td>Jiu-ku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 Hata-chi</td>
<td>Ni-jiu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21 Hata-chi amari hito-tsu</td>
<td>Ni-jiu-ichi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30 Mi-so-dji</td>
<td>San-jiu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40 Yo-so-dji</td>
<td>Shi-jiu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50 I-so-dji</td>
<td>Go-jiu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60 Mu-so-dji</td>
<td>Roku-jiu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70 Nana-so-dji</td>
<td>Shichi-jiu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80 Ya-so-dji</td>
<td>Hachi-jiu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90 Kokono-so-dji</td>
<td>Ku-jiu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100 Momo-chi</td>
<td>Hiaku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td>Ni-hiaku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300</td>
<td>Sam-biaku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400</td>
<td>Shi-hiaku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500 I-ho-chi or i-ho-tsu</td>
<td>Go-hiaku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>600</td>
<td>Rop-piaku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>700</td>
<td>Shichi-hiaku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>800 Ya-ho</td>
<td>Hap-piaku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>900</td>
<td>Ku-hiaku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,000 Chi-dji</td>
<td>Sen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2,000</td>
<td>Ni-sen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3,000</td>
<td>San-sen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10,000 Yorodzu</td>
<td>Man</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30,000</td>
<td>Sam-man</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100,000</td>
<td>Oku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,000,000</td>
<td>Chô</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The terminations *tsu*, *chi*, and *dji* of the Japanese series of numerals, and perhaps also the *du* of *yorodzu*, are only different forms of the same particle. They are probably all identical with the genitive suffix *tsu*. Towo, "ten," does not
take this termination, but it is preserved in the phrase *tsudzu hatachi*, which properly signifies "ten or twenty years of age," although later writers have given it the meaning of "nineteen or twenty years of age."

*Yatsu* was originally a general word for "a great number." Thus, in the *Manyōshū* we have *u wo yatsu kadzuke*, "keeping large numbers of cormorants." *Yaso* and *yaho* are also used in the same sense.

The numerals of the Japanese series above ten are obsolete in the modern language except *hatachi*, *misodji*, &c., as far as *vosodji*, which are still in use, but only with the meaning "twenty years of age," "thirty years of age," &c. *Yorodzu* also remains in use, in the sense of "a very large number," "a myriad."

The *maru* in *towo'mari hito-tsu* is *amari*, "over and above," "in addition," with the initial *a* elided.

Immediately before a noun, the numeral of the Japanese series is used with a Japanese word, and of the Chinese series with a Chinese word. In this position the Japanese numerals are commonly put in the root form, i.e., without the final syllables *tsu*, *chi*, or *dji*, but the longer form is also used, though more rarely. We may say, for instance, *futatsu tose* as well as *futa tose*, "two years." For numbers above ten, Chinese numerals are used with Japanese words, except in the old language.

In counting, Japanese use the root form, except that instead of *hito*, *futa*, they say *hi*, *fu*.

Whenever a Japanese numeral does not immediately precede its noun, or where it does not qualify any noun, it is invariably put in the longer form, as *futatsu no toshi*, or *toshi futatsu*, "two years"; *futatsu tamahe*, "give me two."

The words before which Chinese numerals are placed are monosyllabic, and are mostly names of weights or measures, or belong to the class of *Auxiliary Numerals* described below.
Larger numbers than ten thousand are usually expressed by the help of multiples of *man, oku* and *chô* being very rarely used. One hundred and fifty thousand, for instance, is expressed by *jiu-go-man* rather than by *ichi oku go man*.

In numerals consisting of several words, the same order is followed as in English, e.g., *sen happiaku roku jiu hachi*, 1868.

**ORDINALS.**

The Japanese language has no separate words for ordinal numbers. They are expressed by prefixing *dai*, or adding *ban me* or *go* to the cardinal numbers. These particles are usually combined, as in the following examples:

*Dai ni ban me.*  
No. 2, the second.

*Dai hiaku nijii roku go.*  
No. 126.

*Roku ban or roku ban me.*  
The sixth.

Sometimes the cardinal numbers are used without addition as *Ansei ni nen*, “the second year of Ansei.”

**AUXILIARY NUMERALS.**

Instead of joining the numeral immediately to the noun, the Japanese language generally prefers to use what I have ventured to call Auxiliary Numerals. They correspond to such English phrases as “six head of cattle,” “two pair of shoes,” “five sail of ships,” which would be in Japanese *ushi rop piki, hakimono ni soku, fune go sô*. Auxiliary numerals may either follow the noun, as in the examples just given, or they may be placed before it, with the genitive particle *no* intervening, as *futa hashira no kami*, “two gods.”

The following lists contain the more common of this class of words.

**AUXILIARY NUMERALS OF JAPANESE ORIGIN.**

*Eda* (branch), for *chôshi*, a kettle with a long handle.

*Furi* (brandish), for bills (*naginata*), swords (*tachi*), &c.

*Hane* (wing), for helmets.
Hari (stretch), for bows, tents, mosquito-tents.
Hashira (pillar), for gods of the Shintō mythology; also, in the older language, for men.
Kake (hang), for cruppers and several other parts of harness.
Kara (empty), for drums.
Kasane (pile), for official clothes.
Kashira (head), for eboshi (a kind of cap) and deer.
Kazari (ornament), for kammuri, a sort of cap of ceremony.
Koshi (loin), for swords of all kinds.
Kuchi 'mouth', for saddles, stirrups, and bits.
Kudari, for trowsers.
Kumi (pile), for jiu-bako, sets of boxes piled one on the other.
Moto (stem), for plants, and for a large kind of falcon, on account of the perch on which they rest.
Nagare (flow), for flags.
Ori (bend), for small boxes.
Saho (pole), for nagamochi, a travelling chest carried on a pole.
Sashi, for mackerel.
Sorokhe (set), for horse-gear.
Suhe (seat), for falcons.
Suji (line), for bridles, bowstrings, arrows, girdles, spears.
Tomahi, for storehouses.
Tsugahi (brace). In sending presents of wild geese, wild ducks, swans, and pheasants, they are usually reckoned by tsugahi, or brace.

**AUXILIARY NUMERALS OF CHINESE ORIGIN.**

Bi (tail), for fish.
Bu (class), for books, or for copies of a book.
Chō (handle), for norimons and jinrikishas, tools with handles, muskets, small drums (tsutsumi), ink sticks.
Chō (stretch), for bows, stringed instruments.
**Cho** (card), for packets of medicine.

**Fū** (seal), for sealed letters.

**Fuku** (border), for hanging pictures.

**Gu** (set), for clothing, &c.

**Hai** (cup), for cups, glasses full.

**Hei** (handle), for things with handles, such as *uchiwa*.

**Hiki**, for animals, except birds and men.

**Ho** (ear of corn), for *utsubo*, a kind of quiver.

**Hon** (stem), for cylindrical things, as pens, fans, sticks, large fish, spears, whips, &c.

**In** (number, for officials, &c.

**Jikii** (roller), for hanging pictures.

**Kai** (cover), for hats.

**Ken** (eave), for houses.

**Kiaku** (leg), for chairs and other articles of furniture having legs.

**Ko** or *ka*, for things generally, especially where no other auxiliary numeral is in use, as for places, days, months, years, &c. This numeral is placed immediately before the noun, as *ik-ka-sho*, “one place.”

**Kwa** (ball), for balls.

**Kwan** (tube), for wind instruments, also pens.

**Kwan** (roll), for books, also stuffs made up into rolls.

**Mai**, for flat things, such as sheets of paper, flat fish, clothing.

**Men** (face, surface), for mirrors, cup-stands, ink stones, *koto* (a stringed instrument).

**Mon** (gate), for cannon.

**Nin** (man), for men.

**Riō** (rim), for carriages.

**Riō** (collar), for armour, clothing.

**Riu** (grain, for pills, grains of rice.

**Satsu** (vol.), for volumes of a book.

**Shin** (burn), for sticks of incense.

**Shin** (head), for poems.
NUMERALS.

So (boat), for ships.
So (pair), for pairs of screens.
Soku (foot), for pairs of shoes, stockings, &c.
Tō (head), for some animals, as dogs, oxen.
Tsū (communication), for documents.
Wa (feather), for birds.
Wa (bundle), for bundles of grass, straw, grapes, firewood, vegetables, &c.

Examples of Numerals:—

Fune hitotsu tsukuri-tari.  He has made a boat.
Ya-chi-tabi kanashiki.  Many thousand times lamentable.
Sen shi-hiaku ni-jiu-go dora.  One thousand four hundred and twenty-five dollars.
Hito tose ni futa tabi.  Twice in one year.
Sanshi menjō sanyō.  Three passports for three men.
Go ka nen no ahida.  For the space of five years.
Miso moji amari hito moji.  Thirty-one letters.
Hitotsu wo kikite, to wo wo shiru.  Hearing one, to know ten.

Ushi ippiki uchi-koroshi, hoki-ni hiki ubahi-toru.  They killed one ox, and carried away as plunder two others.

The class of na or uninflected words comprises numerous adverbs.* They generally consist of a root, followed by one of the particles ni or to. In some words, however, it is optional to omit the particle, as naze ni or naze, “why”; haru-baru to or haru-baru, “from afar”; and in numerous other cases the root stands alone without any particle, as inishihe, “anciently”; ima, “now”; kon-nichi, “to-day.”

The derivation of most words of this class shows that they

* For other classes of adverbs, see under the verb and adjective.
are really nothing more than nouns, as for example ima, “now,” from i, root of iru, “to remain,” and ma, “a space”; koko, “here,” from ko, “this,” and ko, an old word meaning “place”; ohokata, “probably,” from ohoki, “great,” and kata, “side,” “part.”

The root is often reduplicated, sometimes to convey the idea of repetition, as dan-dan, “step by step,” “gradually”; tabi-tabi, “frequently”; but oftener merely for the sake of emphasis, as haru-baru to, “from afar”; tsura-tsura, “attentively.”

The Japanese language is rich in onomatopoetic adverbs.

Examples:—

*Gata-gata*, with a rattling noise.
*Do-to*, with a thud.
*Soyoro or soyo-soyo*, with a rustling sound.
*Futa-futa*, with a flapping noise, as of a fan.
*Dobun-to*, with a plunging sound.
*Sara-sara*, with a rattling noise.

Examples of na as adverbs:—

*Ima ha tayu.* It hath now ceased.
*Yoso ni shite kofureba kuru-shi.* Being away [from him], I pine for love.
*Haruka ni miyu.* It is visible afar off.
*Wadzuka ni hitori futari.* Only a few— one or two persons.
*Shiba-shiba mo mimaku no hoshisa.* The desire to see thee frequently.
*Imada koneba.* Because he does not yet come.

**CONJUNCTIONS.**

The Japanese language is sparing in the use of conjunctions. The necessity for them is in some measure
obviated by the Rule (see Chap. IX.) according to which the adverbial form of the verb or adjective is used instead of the conclusive form or attributive form whenever followed by a verb or adjective co-ordinated with it in the sentence. Thus, in the sentence *kokoro wo tsukushi, chikara wo kiwamete, ahi-hataraku-beshi,* “you must work together, giving to it all your soul, and devoting all your strength,” the circumstance that *tsukushi* is put in the adverbial form is a sufficient indication that this verb stands in the same connexion with the following verb *kiwamete,* which is expressed in English by the use of the conjunction “and.”

Where in English the conjunction “and” is inserted between two nouns, it is commonly omitted in Japanese. *Hiaku-shô chô-nin no antai,* “the security of the peasants and townsfolk”; *sake sakana,* “sake and fish.” Most words used as conjunctions are verbs or particles, or combinations of words of these two classes. A few, however, are *na,* alone, or with a particle added.

Ex. : *Katsu,* and, moreover.

*Katsu mata,* and again.
*Hata,* further.
*Mata,* again.
*Mata ha,* or.
*Hata mata,* again.
*Motsutomo,* still, nevertheless.

The above are placed at the beginning of the clause to which they belong.

*Auida* (lit. “space”). because.
*Yuye* or *yuye ni* (lit. “cause”), because.
*Jô* (lit. “article”), inasmuch as, because that.

The last three words are placed at the end of the clause.
after the verb in the attributive form. They occur very frequently in the modern epistolary and official style.

INTERJECTIONS.

Interjections belong to the class of uninflected words. They require little remark.

Examples of interjections:

Iza! tomoni mi ni yukan. Come! let us go and see it it together.
Ana! omoshiro! Oh! how amusing!
Ana! u yo no naka! Ah! what a wretched place this world is!
Ahare! ima ha yo ni naki Alas! can he have now entered the number of men hito no kazu ni irishi ni not of this world!
ya! Woshi! woshi! Hush! hush!
CHAPTER IV.
INFLECTED PRINCIPAL WORDS.
(Kotoba or Hataraki-kotoba.)

This class of words corresponds to the "verb" and "adjective" of the grammars of European languages, but with limitations which will be understood from the following observations. The reader had better at once discard from his mind any notions of the functions of inflection which he may have acquired by the study of European languages. In Japanese, inflection has nothing to do with voice, mood, tense, person, gender, number, or case. Instead of a passive voice, Japanese verbs have derivative verbs with a conjugation the same as that of active verbs; mood and tense are indicated by tenizwoha or suffixes; person is only occasionally and indirectly intimated by the use of honorific or humble particles; gender is denoted by compounds similar to the English words "he-ass," "she-ass," and number and case are expressed, if at all, by suffixes or particles distinct from the noun, which, as has been already stated, is never inflected.

In the Japanese language, the principal office of inflection, as distinguished from the addition of suffixes, is to give to the same root the force of a different part of speech according to the inflection employed. In Latin, and even in English, inflection has to a limited extent the same function. Thus, for the verbal root *fac* we have *facit*, a verb, *facere*, which is virtually a noun, and *factus*, which is an adjective, and in English the same root *lend* appears as a verb in *lends*, and in the participle *lending* as an adjective or a noun according to circumstances. The extent to which this system is carried is one of the chief distinctive features of Japanese grammar.
Not only have all *kotoba* (inflected words, *i.e.*, verbs and adjectives) forms in which they appear successively as nouns, adverbs, adjectives, and verbs, but the suffixes indicative of tense, &c., have inflections by which they are affected in the same manner.

Inflection has a second function, *viz.*, to provide bases to which are added the suffixes or *teniwoha*. The form for which the term "Negative Base" has been adopted in this treatise is employed solely for this purpose, and each of the four other forms, although at times a separate and independent word, may also be a mere base to which certain suffixes are attached.

The following table gives a synoptical view of all the inflections of which Japanese principal words or *kotoba* are capable. It should be studied in connexion with the table of terminations given at the close of Chapter VII.
TABLE OF INFLECTIONS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ROOT.</th>
<th>REGULAR.</th>
<th></th>
<th>IRREGULAR.</th>
<th>ADJECTIVES.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Conjugation I.</td>
<td>Conjugation II.</td>
<td>Conjugation III.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kashi, &quot;lend&quot;</td>
<td>tabe, &quot;eat&quot;</td>
<td>mi, &quot;see&quot;</td>
<td>ari, &quot;be&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adverb.</td>
<td>kashi</td>
<td>tabe</td>
<td>mi</td>
<td>ari</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conclusive Form or Verb.</td>
<td>kasu</td>
<td>tabu</td>
<td>miru</td>
<td>ari</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attributive or Substantive Form.</td>
<td>kasu</td>
<td>tabururu</td>
<td>miru</td>
<td>aru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base for Neg and Future Particles.</td>
<td>kasa</td>
<td>tabe</td>
<td>mi</td>
<td>ara</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kase</td>
<td>tahure</td>
<td>mure</td>
<td>are</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ROOT.

1. The roots of verbs and adjectives are often used as nouns, as *yorokobi no amari*, “excess of joy”; *e-gata no girī*, “a meaning hard to apprehend”; *shiro no Satuma jōfu*, “white Satsuma fine cloth”; *tsukahi*, “a messenger.” In these examples *yorokobi, amari, egata, shiro, and tsukahi* are the roots of *yorokobu*, “to rejoice,” *amaru*, “to exceed,” *egataki*, “hard to apprehend,” *shiroki*, “white,” and *tsukafu*, “to send.” It is more convenient, however, to consider these nouns as derived from *kotoba*, and they have been accordingly noticed under that head at p. 41.

2. The root is also used in forming compounds, as *kashi-ya*, “a house to let”; *yo-hodo*, “a good deal”; *waru-gashikoki*, “badly-clever,” i.e., “cunning.”

3. In exclamations the adjective is put in the root form.

PRINCIPAL PARTS OF KOTOBA (VERB AND ADJECTIVE).
ADVERB OR ADVERBIAL FORM.

In verbs this form does not differ from the root; in adjectives it is distinguished by the addition of the syllable *ku.* As will be seen below, the term “adverb” or “adverbial form” does not cover all the uses to which this form is applied. Sometimes it is a true adverb (1), at other times it is joined to a verb or adjective, but without qualifying it (2), and may therefore still be called an adverb, although not exactly in the ordinary sense of the word, and it is sometimes not an adverb at all, but a noun (3), or merely a base to which suffixes are attached (4).

1. The adverbial forms of adjectives are sometimes adverbs, as *hayaku hashiru*, “to run fast,” *atsuku shasuru*, “to thank

* The spoken language drops the letter *k* in this termination, and the contracted form is also frequently found in books of the *naka-mukashi*, or middle-age of Japanese history, as for instance the later *Monogatari.*
warmly." The adverbial forms of verbs have often the same force. For instance, in the sentence *chikaku hashiri kitari,* “he has come near running,” it is plain that *chikaku* and *hashiri* both stand in precisely the same relation to *kitari.* Both words describe the manner of the coming, and are therefore adverbs. It is this use of the adverbial form which has suggested the term applied to it in the *Kotoba no Chikamichi,* viz., *zoku-yō-gen,* or “word joined to inflected words.”

What we should call compound verbs are often nothing more than verbs preceded in this way by the adverbial forms of other verbs, as *buchi-korosu,* to “beat-kill,” *i.e.,* “to beat to death”; *kiri-harafu,* “to cut-clear-away,” *i.e.,* “to clear away by cutting.”

2. A most important function of this form is described in the term invented for it by a native grammarian, viz., *ren-yō-gen,* or “word co-ordinated with inflected words.” It is a rule of Japanese syntax that when two or more *kotoba* are co-ordinated in the same sentence, the last only receives the inflection which properly belongs to all, those which precede being placed in the adverbial form. [See below, Chap. IX.]

In compound verbs the first element is sometimes co-ordinated with the second in this way, as *yuki-kaheru,* “to go and return.”

3. The adverbial form may be a noun, as in the following examples:—

- *Furuku yori.* From of old.
- *Kore wo tanomi ni te.* Trusting in this.

4. A number of the *teniwoha* are added to the root-form as a base. [See below, Chapters VI. and VII.]

**CONCLUSIVE FORM.**

This form has been termed variously by Japanese writers *kiruru kotoba,* *zet-tei-gen,* or *sai-dan-gen,* literally “cutting,”
“determining,” or “decisive word.” These epithets have reference not only to the force of the conclusive form, which is the same as that of our indicative mood, but to the position which it always occupies at the end of a sentence. Strictly speaking the conclusive form is not of any tense. In the sentences kaha nagaru, kaha fukashi, the properties “flowing” and “depth” are predicated of the river without reference to time, and it is only from the context that one can judge whether time past, present, or future is intended. But as the past and future are generally indicated by suffixes, the present tense is in the majority of cases the most suitable translation for the conclusive form of verbs or adjectives. Thus, in the absence of any indication to the contrary in the context, the above phrases would be translated “the river flows,” “the river is deep,” although it is quite possible that the context may render it desirable to translate them “the river flowed,” or “the river will flow,” “the river was deep,” or “the river will be deep.”

The want of a proper system of punctuation in Japanese books often renders it difficult for the student to distinguish where one sentence ends and another begins. The only remedy for this lies in his making himself familiar with the conclusive forms both of verbs and adjectives, and of the inflected teniwoha or suffixes.

Examples of Conclusive Form:—

Nochi no hito no sadame wo matsu. I await the decision of posterity.
Kono teniwoha ni futa kokoro ari. This suffix has two meanings.
Kono hataraki-kotoba ito oshī. These inflected words are very numerous.
Ohomune ya ni onaji. Its general meaning is the same as that of ya.
A few adverbs are obtained by reduplicating the conclusive forms of verbs. Ex.: *O soru-osoru*, "tremblingly"; *yuku-yuku*, "as time goes on," "while on our way."

*For the suffixes to this form, see Chaps. VI. and VII.

**ATTRIBUTIVE OR SUBSTANTIVE FORM.**

This form is denominated in the *Kotoba no Chikamichi zoku-tai-gen*, or "word joined to nouns," *i.e.*, "adjective," and other names of a similar purport have been invented for it by other native writers on grammar.

1. This form may be an adjective. In the case of verbal roots, it then corresponds to the participle in *ing* of English verbs, but it may oftener be translated by placing the verb in a relative clause. Like the conclusive form, it is of no tense, and the context must decide whether, in translating it, the present, past, or future tense should be employed.

There is an ambiguity in the use of this form as an adjective which a glance at the context is generally sufficient to remove. *Matsu hito*, for instance, may mean either "the man who is waiting" or "the man for whom I wait"; *shira*

* The conclusive form has almost entirely disappeared from the modern form of the spoken language, its place having been usurped by the attributive form. An exception is *nashi*, the conclusive form of the negative adjective, which is not unfrequently used in the spoken language, although *nai* (a contraction of the attributive form *naki*) is more common. In some of the provincial dialects the conclusive forms of adjectives are still in use. This change in the construction of Japanese is well worthy of the attention of students of language. It is as if we gave up the use of the indicative mood, and used participles instead, saying, for instance, "he dying" or "his dying" instead of "he died," "his being killed" instead of "he was killed." The sensation headings of American newspapers, and the verbless sentences of telegrams and advertisements, show that English is not altogether free from the same tendency. For the manner in which this change was brought about in Japanese, see Chap. V., under the particles *no* and *ga.*
hito may be either “the man who knows” or “the man I know”; arigataki kokoro may be either “a thankful heart” or “a heart for which one should be thankful.”

Examples of Attributive Form as Adjective:

Noki chikaku tobu hotaru.  The firefly that flies near the eaves.

Ohan to susumu toki.  When he started in pursuit.  [Lit., the time of his starting to pursue.]

Inuru jiu ichi nichi.  The past 11th day.

Yuku he naku.  Without any place to go to.

Tametomo no yuku he shirazaru koto.  His not being able to learn where Tametomo had gone to.

Yoki hito.  A good man.

Uwo ohoki kaha.  A river in which fish are plentiful.

2. This form has, as a noun, two significations. Kasu, for example, may mean either “the person or thing who lends” or “the act of lending”; yoki may mean “good persons or things” or it may mean “goodness.” In other words, kasu may be the equivalent either of kasu mono or of kasu koto; yoki may correspond in meaning to either yoki mono or yoki koto. It will be observed that in neither of these senses has the attributive form the same meaning as the root, which may also be used as a noun.

Examples of Attributive Form as Noun:

Zoku-tai-gen yori ukuru ha.  Those (teniwoha) which are attached to the attributive form.

Tatsutoki mo iyashiki mo.  Both noble and mean persons.
3. This form takes the place of the conclusive form when preceded by さ, か, or an interrogative, by a rule which is explained in Chapter IX.

Examples:—

Otonashi-gaha to さつうini nagare-idzuru. It is as the river Otonashi that it at last flows out.
Kore さ medetaki. It is this that is beautiful.

4. The suffixes which may be attached to this form as base are given below. [See Chaps. VI. and VII.]

BASE FOR NEGATIVE AND FUTURE SUFFIXES.

This base never constitutes a complete word by itself. It is only found associated with the negative and future suffixes. It is termed, in the Kotoba no Chikamichi, shō-zen-gen, or "future form," and is opposed to the ki-zen-gen, or "past form," as the perfect is termed in the same treatise. The San-in-kò says that this form imada shikarararu ni mochiyu, "is used for events which have not yet taken place," a description which seems more appropriate than the shō-zen-gen of
the Chikamichi, as it would apply to the negative as well as to the future.

For the suffixes attached to this base, see Chaps. VI. and VII.

PERFECT.

In the modern written language, verbs of the first conjugation have a perfect formed by adding aru to the root, the final i of which is contracted with the initial a of aru into e. Thus kaku, "to write," has a perfect kakeru (for kaki + aru), "to have written"; ifu, "to say," has a perfect iheru (for ihi + aru), "to have said."

In the most ancient literature we find a form from which the final syllable ru of this form has disappeared,* and there it is not confined to verbs of the first conjugation, but is also in use, although with some changes, for verbs of the other conjugations and for adjectives. It is this form which is in the present treatise called the perfect, the ki-sen-gen of the Chikamichi. The perfect form is used in the following ways.

1. In the most ancient literature† it stands by itself as a perfect, as

\[\text{Inishihe no hito ni ware are ya?}\]
\[\text{Ikani omohoshimese ka?}\]

Have I been one of the men of old?
What has been his thought?

2. When preceded by koso, it takes the place of the conclusive form. Hence it has been called by a native gram-

* There are several other instances of the disappearance of the ru final of the verb aru and its derivatives. In the written language miyezaru nari is often written miyezanari, and in the spoken language we have ta (the termination of the past tense) for taru, kirei-na for kirei naru, waruka (Nagasaki dialect) for waruku aru, and attakke (Yedo dialect) for aritari-keri.

† The perfect form me of the future suffix n or nu is occasionally met with in modern writers.
Vern koso no musubu kotoba, or “form joined with koso.” [See Chapter IX.]

Examples:

*Kore koso tama nare.* It is this, and not anything else, which is the jewel.

*Yone koso yokere.* It is rice only that is good.

3. The most familiar use of this form is as the base to which are added the conditional and concessive particles *ba, do,* and *domo.* It retains, however, its force as a perfect, as may be seen by comparing such forms as *yukeba,* “since he has gone” or “if he has gone,” with *yukaba,* “if he went” or “if he should go.”

4. In the first conjugation of verbs, and in the irregular verb *aru,* this form coincides with that of the Imperative Mood.

Example:

*Yuke,* “go!” *nakare,* “let it not be.”

* For the mode in which the Imperative is formed in other conjugations, and when combined with a negative, see under the suffixes *yo,* *na* —*so,* and *na.*

The following table shows the formation of the Imperative, both Positive and Negative, in the different conjugations:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERB.</th>
<th>POSITIVE IMPERATIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE IMPERATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st Conj.</td>
<td>kasu</td>
<td>kase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd Conj.</td>
<td>taburu</td>
<td>tabsyo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd Conj.</td>
<td>miru</td>
<td>miyo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irregular Verbs.</td>
<td>aru</td>
<td>are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kuru</td>
<td>koyo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>suru</td>
<td>seyo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>inuru</td>
<td>ine</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CONJUGATIONS.

CONJUGATIONS.*

There are three conjugations of verbs and two of adjectives.  
*First Conjugation of Verbs.*—To this conjugation belong  
the great majority of underived verbs. It is distinguished by  
having a form for the negative base distinct from the root,

* Of the three conjugations of Japanese verbs, the first is evidently  
the original one.

The third consists entirely of verbs with monosyllabic roots. If these  
verbs had been inflected according to the first conjugation, the vowel of  
the root would have been obliterated in every part of the verb except the  
adverbial form, a loss which could be ill afforded in words consisting of  
only two letters. To avoid this the letter ersed between  
the root and the characteristic vowel endings of the attributive, conclu-  
sive, and perfect forms, so that we have, for instance, instead of  
me me, miru miru mire. In the case of the negative base, the obliteration  
of the vowel of the root has been avoided by a different means, viz., by  
allowing the root to remain without change.

There are a few other verbs with monosyllabic roots whose inflections.  
no doubt partly from the same cause, resemble to some extent (and in  
the Yedo spoken language are identical with) those of verbs of the third  
conjugation. One of these verbs is uru, “to get,” which is conjugated  
thus: Adv. e, concl. u, attrib. uru, neg. base e, perfect ure. Uru may in  
fact be considered a slightly irregular verb of the third conjugation. It  
will be seen by referring to the Table of Inflections that the principal  
parts of uru are identical with the terminations of verbs in e of the second  
conjugation, and there is every reason to conclude that all such verbs are  
composed of a root followed by this verb uru. This is plainly the case  
with Passive and Causative Verbs, which constitute the large majority of  
verbs of this conjugation. Korosuru, “to be killed,” is obviously  
nothing more than korosu-ari-uru, i.e., “get-be-kill”; korosasuru, “to  
cause to kill,” is koroshi-shi-uru, i.e., “get-make-kill.” The Derivative  
Transitive and Intransitive verbs, such as adzukuru, “to give in charge”  
(really to get taken charge of), miyuru, “to be visible,” may be easily  
shown to contain the same element, and an analysis of the remaining  
verbs in e of this conjugation will generally reveal it. The number of  
those whose roots end in i is comparatively small, and many of them  
may also be inflected according to the first conjugation. They are also  
plainly derivatives, but it may perhaps be doubted whether the final uru
CONJUGATIONS.

and by the circumstance that the inflections involve no increase in the number of syllables of the root.

Second Conjugation of Verbs.—The number of underived verbs of this conjugation is small, but it comprises all passive and causative verbs. The Japanese grammarians make two conjugations of it, drawing an unnecessary distinction between verbs whose roots end in i and those whose roots end in e.

In the second conjugation the root and the negative base are identical in form, and the attributive form and the perfect contain one syllable more than the root. In the spoken language of Yedo, and sometimes in the modern written language, the attributive form and perfect of verbs in i of this conjugation terminate in irl, ire, and the same forms of verbs in e end in eru, ere.

Third Conjugation of Verbs.—The third conjugation differs from the first in having the negative base the same as the root, and from the second in having the conclusive indistinguishable from the attributive form. The following list contains all the verbs of this conjugation. It will be observed that they have without exception monosyllabic roots. In this conjugation the older language often attaches to the adverbial form the teniwoha which belong properly to the conclusive form.

Kiru, "to clothe"; niru, "to resemble"; niru, "to boil"; is the verb eru, "to get," or some other verb with a monosyllabic root, as, for instance, iru, "to remain."

It may be observed that the spoken language of the east of Japan, by omitting the conclusive form and preserving the vowel of the root in the attributive and perfect forms (having eru iru, ere ire instead of eru, ure), makes the second conjugation agree entirely with the third. It is not improbable that in this case the spoken forms are really older than those of the literary language.

The above remarks may be summed up by saying that the First is the Original conjugation; the Second, the Derivative or eru conjugation; and the Third, the Monosyllabic conjugation.
hiru, "to dry in the sun"; hiru, "to winnow"; hiru, "to sneeze"; miru, "to see"; iru, "to shoot with a bow"; iru, "to melt"; iru, "to dwell"; keru, "to kick."

IRREGULAR VERBS.

Aru, "to be." The conjugation of aru differs from that of verbs of the first conjugation in the conclusive form only, which is ari instead of aru. The latter form is, however, retained as a base for the suffixes (except to, which is rather a conjunction than a suffix proper) of the conclusive form. Like aru are conjugated oru, haberu, and imasokaru, and the suffixes into the composition of which aru enters, viz., keru, taru, saru, meru, naru, and seru. The imperative of aru is are, and the negative imperative nakare (for naku-are).

Kuru, "to come." In this verb the suffixes shi and shika, which in other verbs it is the rule to append to the root-form, are more usually, though not invariably, attached to the negative base ko. The imperative of kuru is ko, but modern writers have often koyo or koi. The negative imperative is kuna, or in the later language kuruna.

Suru, "to do." Like suru are conjugated ohasuru, "to be," and the numerous compounds of suru, as hi-suru, "to compare"; ji-suru, "to decline" or "refuse"; shō-zuru, "to produce," &c., &c. The suffixes shi and shika are never found attached to the root-form of this verb, viz., shi, but always to the negative base se. The imperative of suru is seyo. The negative imperative is suna or suruna.

Inuru, "to go away." Like inuru is conjugated shinuru, "to die," and also the suffix nuru, which is nothing more than inuru with the initial i elided. Inuru has the imperative ine. Later writers have sometimes ineyo.

* Suru for sa-aru) and shikaru (for shika-aru) are, of course, also conjugated in the same way as aru.
CONJUGATIONS OF ADJECTIVES.

Most adjectives are of the first conjugation; the second conjugation includes those adjectives only whose roots end in *shi* or *ji.* The native grammarians are of opinion that the ending *kere* of the perfect is compounded of *ki,* the termination of the attributive form, and *are,* the perfect form of *aru,* "to be." The old forms *yokemu,* *yokedomo,* which are found in the *Manyoshiiu,* perhaps stand for *yoki-aramu,* *yoki-aredomo,* and are additional instances of the loss of the letter *r* of the verb *aru,* "to be." (See above, note to page 88).

Only a few of the suffixes are attached immediately to the different parts of adjectives. The verb *aru* generally comes between.

DERIVATIVE VERBS.

I. Derived from *na* or Nouns.

Verbs are derived from *na*—

1. By adding the termination *ru,* as
   *Yadoru,* "to lodge"; from *yado,* "a lodging."

2. By adding *mu,* *maru* (intrans.) or *muru* (trans.) as
   *Haramu,* "to become pregnant"; from *hara,* "the belly."
   *Tsukamu,* "to grasp"; from *tsuka,* "a handle."
   *Inamu,* "to refuse"; from *ina,* "no."
   *Kiwamaru,* "to reach a limit"; from *kiwa,* "edge."
   *Kiwamuru,* "to push to an extreme"; from *kiwa,* "edge."

3. By adding *gu,* as
   *Tsunagu,* "to tie"; from *tsuna,* "a rope."

* The reason why the conclusive form does not add *shi* in the second conjugation is obviously because the root already ends in *shi* (or *ji,* which is the same thing in Japanese), and the repetition of the same syllable is disliked. In other respects the second conjugation is the same as the first, and if this difference is only remembered, the student need not trouble himself about the second conjugation of adjectives.
4. By adding なつ, as
   Ajinatu, “to taste”; from あげ, “taste.”
   Tomonatu, “to accompany”; from とも, “company.”
   Mahinatu, “to bribe”; from まひ, “money.”

5. By adding ふ, as
   Utazu, “to sing”; from うた, “song.”

6. By adding なる (root は), as
   Inaburu, “to refuse”; from いな, “no.”
   Otonaburu, “to be of full age”; from おと, “a full grown person.”

7. A good many derivative verbs are formed by adding to nouns the verb する, “to do,” the initial す of which often takes the nigori and becomes ず. In the great majority of these verbs the root is a Chinese word. In the later language those verbs of this class in which the initial す of する takes the nigori often follow the spoken form of verbs of the second conjugation in いる for the Attributive, Neg. Base, and Perfect, as, for instance, あんずる, “to reflect,” which is conjugated thus:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>OLD CONJ.</th>
<th>NEW CONJ.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Adverb</td>
<td>anじ</td>
<td>anじ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concl. Form</td>
<td>anず</td>
<td>anず</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attributive</td>
<td>anずる</td>
<td>anじる</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neg. Base</td>
<td>anぜ</td>
<td>anじ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td>anずれ</td>
<td>anじれ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Examples of derivatives of suru:

Ron-zuru, modern form ron-jiru, "to argue."
Mei-zuru, modern form mei-jiru, "to command."
Omon-zuru (for omoni-suru), modern form omon-jiru, "to esteem."
Karom-zuru (for karomi-suru), modern form karon-jiru, "to despise."

These last two verbs are derived from the nouns omoni, karomi, which contain the roots of the adjectives omoki, "heavy," and karoki, "light." [See above, p. 41.]

Hi-suru, "to compare."

In this example the letter s does not take the nigori, and the conjugation of suru is therefore retained even by modern writers.

8. By adding meku, as

Kara-meku, "to have a Chinese look"; from Kara, "China."
Fuyu-meku, "to have a wintry look"; from Fuyu, "winter."

II. Derived from Verbs.

1. Intransitive and Transitive Verbs.—In English there are seldom distinct words or forms for the intransitive and transitive applications of the same verbal root. Thus the words ride, sink, break, bend, and many others are either transitive or intransitive according to circumstances. In such cases the Japanese language has usually two distinct verbs containing the same root.

These verbs are formed in several different ways, sometimes the transitive from the intransitive form (I.), sometimes vice versa (II.), and sometimes both from an obsolete verb containing the common root (III.).

Intransitive must be distinguished from passive verbs. For instance, kiruru, the intransitive form of kiru, "to cut," should not be confounded with kiraruru, the passive form. The latter only is properly translated "to be cut." Kiruru means
"to possess the quality cut," i.e., "to be discontinuous." It conveys no idea of passivity or of being acted upon either from without or by the subject itself. Many of these verbs are best translated with the help of adjectives terminating in *able* and *ible*. Ururu, kiruru, &c., are exactly rendered by the French *se vendre, se couper*, &c.

The following examples illustrate the various modes in which transitive and intransitive verbs are formed from one another.

**Intransitive.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1st Conjugation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Shirizoku, &quot;to retreat.&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tatsu, &quot;to stand.&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Susumu, &quot;to advance.&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yamu, &quot;to cease.&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1st Conjugation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ugoku, &quot;to move.&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Odoroku, &quot;to be astonished.&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kawaku, &quot;to dry.&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oyobu, &quot;to extend.&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wataru, &quot;to cross over.&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1st Conjugation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kaheru, &quot;to return.&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nokoru, &quot;to remain over.&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1st Conjugation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yoru, &quot;to approach.&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noru, &quot;to mount.&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>3rd Conjugation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Niru, &quot;to be like.&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Transitive.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2nd Conjugation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Shirizokuru, &quot;to drive back.&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tatsuru, &quot;to set up.&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Susumuru, &quot;to encourage.&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yamuru, &quot;to cease.&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1st Conjugation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ugokasu, &quot;to move.&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Odorokasu, &quot;to astonish.&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kawakasu, &quot;to dry.&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oyobosu, &quot;to extend.&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Watasu, &quot;to send over,&quot; &quot;to deliver over.&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2nd Conjugation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kahesu, &quot;to send back.&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nokosu, &quot;to leave.&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2nd Conjugation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yosuru, &quot;to bring near.&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nosuru, &quot;to mount.&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2nd Conjugation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nisuru, &quot;to counterfeit.&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1st Conjugation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kiku, &quot;to hear.&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1st Conjugation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kiru, &quot;to cut.&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Intransitive.
2nd Conjugation.
Kudakuri, "to crumble."
Tokuri, "to melt."

Miyuri, "to be visible."
1st Conjugation.
Tsugaru, "to be continuous."

2nd Conjugation.
Orruri, "to descend."
Okuri, "to rise."
Idzuru, "to go out."
Niguru, "to flee."
Obiyuru, "to start with alarm."
Suguru, "to pass," "to be excessive."

1st Conjugation.
Tasukuri, "to have help."
Sadamaru, "to be fixed."
Kawaru, "to change."

2nd Conjugation.
Shirakuri, "to become white or feeble."

Noburi, (root nobi), "to stretch."

Transitive.
1st Conjugation.
Kudaku, "to crush to pieces."
Toku, "to melt."

3rd Conjugation.
Miru, "to see."

1st Conjugation.
Tsugu, "to join."

III.
1st Conjugation.
Orosu, "to let down."
Okosu, "to raise."
Idasu, "to raise."
Nigasu, "to let flee."
Obiyakasu, "to frighten."
Sugosu or sugusu, "to pass," "to exceed."

2nd Conjugation.
Tasukuri, "to help."
Sadamaru, "to fix."
Kafuri, "to change."

2nd Conjugation.
Shiragara, "to make white."

The transitive verbs terminating in su or suru, although differently inflected from suru, "to do," have no doubt been formed by adding this verb to the root. Indeed, the modern language often conjugates them like suru, and we meet with such forms as watase-shi instead of watashi-shi, tsukahasure-dono instead of tsukahasedomo. The verb masu, so common in the spoken language, is one of the verbs which has been affected in this way. In the older language it is a verb of
the first conjugation, but in the later and spoken language its inflections have been assimilated to those of suru. The terminations aru and uru of the above table are no doubt the verbs aru, "to be," and uru, "to get." The conjugation, however, of those in aru is regular.

In the examples given below we have pairs of transitive verbs containing the same root. Those in the second column may seem at first sight to be merely the causative forms of those in the first column. They are really the transitive forms corresponding to intransitive forms which in most cases have ceased to exist, or perhaps never have existed. Kasu, for example, does not mean "to cause to borrow," but "to make borrowed," i.e., "to lend"; misuru is the transitive form corresponding to the intransitive miyuru, "to be visible," and does not mean "to cause to see," which would be misasuru. The fact that these forms never have a honorific sense shows that they are not regarded as causative verbs.

Karu, "to borrow."  
Sadzukaru, "to receive."  
Adzukaru, "to take charge of."  
Satoru, "to understand."  
Tamaharu, "to receive."  
Kiru, "to wear."  
Miru, "to see."  
Kasu, "to lend."  
Sadzukuru, "to give."  
Adzukuru, "to give in charge."  
Satosu, "to acquaint."  
Tamafu, "to give."  
Kisuru, "to put on (clothes)."  
Misuru, "to show."

2. Causative Verbs. The causative forms of verbs may be obtained by the following empirical rule.

RULE. For verbs of the first conjugation, and the irregular verbs aru and inuru, add to the negative base suru (root se) or in the modern language shinuru (root shime).

For verbs of the second and third conjugations, and the irregular verbs kuru and suru, add to the negative base
sasuru (root sase), or in the modern language shimuru (root shine).

**Exception.** Verbs with monosyllabic roots add seshimuru, the causative of suru, to the root. Suru itself is, of course, an exception.

Examples:—

1st Conjugation.

*Mamoru,* "to guard."

*Mamorasuru* or *mamorashimuru,* "to cause to guard."

*Korosu,* "to kill."

*Korosasuru* or *korosashimuru,* "to cause to kill."

2nd Conjugation.

*Yasuru,* "to become lean."

*Yasesasuru* or *yaseshimuru,* "to cause to become lean."

*Tadzunuru,* "to look for."

*Tadzunesasuru* or *tadzuneshimuru,* "to cause to look for."

3rd Conjugation.

*Miru,* "to see."

*Misasuru* or *miseshimuru,* "to cause to see."

All causative verbs have their roots terminating in e, and are of the second conjugation.

The causative forms are very commonly used instead of the original verbs in a honorific sense. The reason is that, according to Japanese ideas, it is considered polite to represent the man of rank as surrounded by vassals and attendants, whom he causes to execute his commands.*

3. **Passive Verbs.** The passive forms of verbs may be obtained by the following empirical rule:—

* In suru, sasuru, or shimuru, the terminations of causative verbs, it is easy to recognize the elements suru (root shi), "do," and uru, "get." The passive terminations ruru and raruru are evidently composed of the verbs aru, "be," and uru, "get."
Rule. * For verbs of the first conjugation, and the irregular verbs aru and inuru, add ruru (root re) to the negative base. For verbs of the second and third conjugations, and the irregular verbs kuru and suru, add raruru (root rare) to the negative base.

Examples:—

**ACTIVE.**

Kasu, "to lend."
Taburu, "to eat."
Miru, "to see."
Aru, "to be."
Kuru, "to come."
Suru, "to do."
Inuru, "to depart."

**PASSIVE.**

Kasaruru, "to be lent."
Taberaruru, "to be eaten."
Miraruru, "to be seen."
Araruru, "to be able to be."
Koraruru, "to be able to come."
Seraruru, "to be done."
Inaruru, "to be able to depart."

All passive verbs have their roots terminating in e, and are of the second conjugation.

In the case of intransitive verbs these forms have a potential signification, as in the examples koraruru, inaruru, cited above, and the passive forms of transitive verbs may have a potential as well as a passive signification. Miraruru, for instance, may be "to be seen" or "to be able to see." The potential often merges into a honorific sense, it being thought more respectful to say that a man "has been able to do something" than simply that "he has done something." The passive forms of causatives are very frequently used as honorific substitutes for the original verbs. A familiar example of this is araseraruru, the passive of the causative of aru, a form much used in speaking of the Emperor.*

Examples of Transitive and Intransitive, Causative and Passive Verbs:—

* The Kotoba no Kayohi-ji, Vol. I., is the best native authority on the subject of intransitive and transitive, causative and passive verbs.
Having given the child in charge to a woman, he caused her to nourish it.

When he caused (his attendants) to burn it by throwing it into the middle of a fire, it burned away with a blaze.

He burnt it by placing it on the fire.

The map which you have been good enough to send me.

Creatures born between heaven and earth.

The imperial line of descent has never changed.

(The Emperor's) praying every morning and every evening that his subjects may have ease.

To give pleasure to the hearts of men.

Being robbed of his own soul.

There is no one to be seen.

4. In the Manyōshū and Kojiki there are found many verbs which differ from the ordinary forms of the same verbs by having aru, afu, or asu instead of the u final, or by being lengthened in other ways:

Examples:—

Tsutsushimarur for tsutsushimur, "to be quiet and respectful."
Kakusafu for kakusu, "to hide."
Nabikafu for nabiku, "to bend."
Nagekasu for nageku, "to lament."
Tsumasu for tsumu, "to pluck."

These seem to be merely poetical forms, of the same meaning as the original verbs.

III. Derived from Adjectives.

1. By adding *mu* to the root.
Ex.: Shironu, "to become white"; from shiro, root of shiroki, "white."

Kuroumu, "to become black"; from kuro, root of kuroki, "black."

The lengthened forms shiromaru, kuromaru, &c., are also found. The corresponding transitive verbs end in *muru* (root *me*), as shiromuru, "to make white," nagamuru, "to lengthen," "to gaze upon."

2. By adding *ru* to the root.
Ex.: Shigeru, "to be dense"; from shigeki, "dense."

Nigaru, "to feel bitterly"; from nigaki, "bitter."

The final vowel of the root is sometimes changed, as in Asuru, "to be shallow"; from asaki, "shallow."
Katsuru, "to be hard"; from kataki, "hard."

The last two examples are, however, verbs of the second conjugation.

3. By adding *garu* to the root. These verbs are chiefly formed from the desiderative adjectives ending in *taki*.
Ex.: Yukitagaru, "to wish to go"; from Yukitaki, "desirous of going."

Hoshigaru, "to be eager for"; from hoshiki, "eager."

Ayashigaru, "to think strange"; from ayashiki, "strange."

Garu is no doubt compounded of *ge*, the termination of nouns described at page 42, and *aru*, "to be." These verbs
are, however, not conjugated like aru, but as regular verbs of the first conjugation. They must not be confounded with the combinations so frequently met with of the adverbial form of adjectives with aru. Hoshigaru, for instance, must be distinguished from hoshik’aru.

**COMPOUND VERBS.**

The first element of a compound verb may be a noun or an adjectival root, but is more commonly a verb in the root form. The first element of a compound may stand to the other—

1st. In the relation of an object direct or indirect.
Ex.: Tabi-datsu, “to start on a journey.”
       Mono-gataru, “to relate.”
2nd. In the relation of an adverb qualifying it.
Ex.: Ni-korosu, “to boil to death.”
       Seme-hairu, “to enter with violence.”
       Buchi-korosu, “to beat to death.”
       Atsu-gohetaru kinu, “thick clothing.”
3rd. It is sometimes co-ordinated with it.
Ex.: Yuki-kaheru, “to go and return.”
       Nige-chiru, “to flee and scatter,” “to be put to the rout.”

**DERIVATIVE ADJECTIVES.**

I. Derived from na.

1. By adding rashiki. These adjectives have a similar signification to English adjectives in ish. They belong to the later language.
Ex.: Kodomo-rashiki, “childish”; from kodomo, “a child.”
       Baka-rashiki, “foolish”; from baka, “fool.”
2. By adding shiki or jiki.
Ex.: Hanahadashiki, “extreme”; from hanahada, “very.”
       Hitoshiki, “uniform,” “similar”; from hito, “one.”
       Kohishiki, “beloved”; from kohi, “love.”
Adjectives in *shiki* often reduplicate the root for the sake of greater emphasis.

Ex.: *Hakabakashiki*, "efficient."

Chinese roots sometimes take this termination.

Ex.: *Bi-bi-shiki*, "splendid"; from *bi*, "beauty."

3. By adding *keki*. *Keki* is a poetical form. It simply changes an uninflected word into an inflected word, and does not alter the meaning. Thus *tahirakeki*, from *tahira*, means "level," "flat," and is the same as *tahira naru* of the ordinary written language, or *tairana* of the spoken language.

Such forms as *naga-keku*, *samu-keku*, where *keku* (never *keki*) follows the root of an adjective, have an entirely different character, and must not be confounded with the adjectives just described.

II. Derived from *kotoba."

1. By adding *shiki* to the root, the vowel of which is usually modified at the same time.

Ex.: *Konomashiki*, "lovable"; from *konomi*, root of *konomu*, "to like."

*Isogashiki*, "busy"; from *isogi*, root of *isogu*, "to be busy," "to be in a hurry."

*O soroshiki*, "dreadful"; from *osori*, root of *osoru*, "to dread."

All verbs have derivative adjectives formed by adding *taki* to the root, and *beki* and *majiki* to the conclusive form, but it is more convenient to include these terminations among the *tenizvoha.*

**COMPOUND ADJECTIVES.**

The first element of a compound adjective may be either a noun, a verb in the root form, or the root of another adjective.

Examples of Compound Adjectives:—

*Na-takaki*, "famous"; from *na*, "name," and *takaki*, "high."

*Te-hayaki*, "dexterous"; from *te*, "hand," and *hayaki*, "quick."
Kiki-gurushiki, "harsh"; from kiku, "to hear," and kurushiki, "painful."
Nogare-gataki, "inevitable"; from nogaruru, "to escape," and kataki, "difficult."
Shi-yasuki, "easy to do"; from suru, "to do," and yasuki, "easy."
Usu-akaki, "light red"; from usuki, "thin," and akaki, "red."
CHAPTER V.

UNINFLECTED TENIWOWA SUFFIXED TO NA.

I. Case Suffixes.

Genitive, \( \text{no, ga, tsu} \), “of.”
Dative, Locative, Instrumental, \( \text{ni, “at,” “in,” “to”}; \text{nite, “in,” “by means of”; he, gari, “towards”; made, “as far as.”} \)
Accusative, \( \text{wo}. \)
Vocative, \( \text{yo, ya, yayo}. \)
Ablative, \( \text{yor, kara, “from.”} \)

II. Plural Suffixes.

\( \text{Ra, domo, tachi, gata, bara, nado, shiu, to}. \)

III. Other Suffixes.

\( \text{Ha (read wa), Distinctive or determinative particle.} \)
\( \text{Mo, “also,” “even.”} \)
\( \text{Ka, Interrogative.} \)
\( \text{Kana, Exclamatory.} \)
\( \text{Ya, Interrogative and Exclamatory.} \)
\( \text{Nan, Emphatic.} \)
\( \text{Zo, “do.”} \)
\( \text{Koso, “do.”} \)
\( \text{To, Conjunctive.} \)
\( \text{Dzutsu, “each.”} \)
\( \text{Dani, “at least.”} \)
\( \text{Sura, “even.”} \)
\( \text{Sahe, “even.”} \)
\( \text{Shi, “only.”} \)
\( \text{Nomi, bakari, “only.”} \)
\( \text{Gachi, “all over.”} \)
\( \text{Nagara.} \)
\( \text{Datera.} \)
Many of the *teniwoha* in this chapter may be suffixed not only to *na*, but to those parts of *kotoba* and inflected *teniwoha* which are capable of being treated as substantives, viz., the adverbial form and the attributive form.

1. CASE SUFFIXES.

There is no suffix to distinguish the nominative case. As shown below, *ha* and *ga* do not indicate the nominative.

**Genitive or Possessive Particles.**

*No, ga, tsu, “of.”*

The distinction between *no* and *ga* resembles that between the English preposition *of* and the *s* added to form the possessive case. This is probably what the Japanese grammarians mean when they tell us that *ga no yori omoshi*, i.e., “*ga* is heavier than *no*,” the possessive relation being looked upon as a closer one than the partitive relation.

In the classical period *ga* was used only after the substantive forms of verbs and a few other words, chiefly pronouns, as, for instance, *ta ga, wa ga, kimi ga, imo ga, chichi ga*. *Ga* and *no* are in later times used without much distinction. Thus *hana ga saku* and *hana no saku* mean precisely the same, viz. “the unfolding of the flowers.” There is, however, a tendency in the Japanese language to treat phrases of this kind as if they contained an assertion, and *hana no saku* or *hana ga saku* are sometimes met with in poetry in the sense of “the flowers unfold.” In the spoken language the last-named meaning has become much the more usual one in the case of *ga*, and so entirely has the proper force of that particle been forgotten in these cases that it is either considered a sign of the nominative case, or is omitted altogether. This construction—viz., the attributive form with or without *ga*—is now used in speaking to the exclusion of the conclusive form, which has passed out of use both for verbs and adjectives. Thus for *midzu nagaru*, “the water flows,” the spoken
language has midzu ga nagaru or midzu nagaru, or midzu wa nagaru; for hana ha shiro, "the flower is white," hana ga shiroi (for shiroki) or hana wa shiroi. [See above, page 85.]

In the later part of the classical period there are instances where ga with a pronoun of the first person seems to imply humility, and with pronouns of the second or third person, contempt or disparagement; but this use of ga is unknown in the more ancient language, and also in its modern form.

No (not ga) is used where the same thing is meant by the two nouns which it joins, or where one is a part of the other as in the examples Yamato no kuni, "the province of Yamato," chichi no Dainagon, "her father the Dainagon," sono toshi no natsu, "the summer of that year."

A noun is sometimes omitted after no if it can be easily supplied from the previous clause, as hito tsuma to ware no, "some one else's husband (or wife) and mine." Tsu is of course to be supplied after no.

No frequently occurs in the ancient poetry in the sense of no gotoki or no gotoku, "like," as tori no muragarite matsu, "to wait assembled in a flock like birds."

Tsu (sometimes dzu) is an old word for the genitive particle. It is obsolete in the modern language except in onodzukara, midzukara, "of or by oneself," and a few other words.

Examples of Genitive Particles:

Tsuki no yo, yuki no ashita. A moonlight night, a snowy morning.

Taregashi ga muko ni naru. To become such a one's son-in-law.

Ono ga waruki koto no sange. The confession of one's own sins.

Saki no kami no, ima no mo. Both the former lord, and the present one.
Miyako he to 
Omofu no mono no 
Kanashiki ha 
Kaheranu hito no 
Areba nari keri.

Ima no yo no hito no monoseru 
fumi uta wo miru ni.

Oki tsu shiranami.

Waga naku namida. 
Nuru ga uchi ni. 
Itsutsu no matsu. 
Seikan kô ga kotoba ni. 
Yuku midzu no hayaku 
(poetical). 
Kimi kofuru namida no toko 
ni michinureba.

Fuyu-gare no 
Mori no kuchi-ba no 
Shimo no uhe ni 
Ochitaru tsuki no 
Kage no sayakesa. 
Matsu hito no kon ya koji ya 
no sadame nakereba.

Even with our joyous anticipations of returning to the capital is mingled the sad thought that there are some who never will return. [In this sentence it is necessary to supply from areba the substantive form aru.]

In reading the prose and poetical compositions of the men of the present day.

The white waves of the open sea.

The tears which I weep.

During my sleep.

Five times six.

In the words of Seikan.

Swift as running water.

As the tears of longing for thee have filled my couch. [In this phrase no joins namida with michinuru, which must be supplied from michinureba.]

Oh! the brightness of the moonlight that falls on the hoar-frost of the decayed leaves of the winter-withered woods!

As there is no certainty as to whether he whom I expect will come or not.
If there were only no end to spring.
The house-bird, i.e., the cock.
The latter part of spring.

Dative, Locative, and Instrumental Cases.

Ni, “at,” “in” or “to,” “into,” “by”; ni te, “by,” “by means of”; he and gari, “towards”; made, “as far as,” “until.”

Ni is sometimes the sign of the dative case, as in the following examples:—

* Show me.
  Wear ni miseyo.
  Hito ni adznkuru.

* To give in charge to some one.
  Oya ni niru.
  In the following examples ni means “to,” “in,” or “into.”

Yokohama ni yuku.
To go to Yokohama.

Yokohama ni zoru.
To live in Yokohama.

Hako ni iruru.
To put into a box.

Ni has the meaning of “along with” in the following example:—

* Along with the wind through the obana (a kind of grass) the moonlight in the courtyard.
  Obana ga kaze ni niha no tsuki-kage.

In such expressions as *isami ni isamite,* “full of eagerness” (lit., “along with eagerness being eager”), ni has the same force.

The instrumental case is represented by the noun followed by ni te. This is the equivalent of *wo motte* of the modern semi-Chinese style.

Ex.: *Chi ni te chi wo arafu.* To wash away blood by blood.
Ni is sometimes apparently the root of an obsolete verb *nu,* "to be." *Ni te,* for instance, may mean "being" as well as "in," and *naru* (*ni* + *aru*) may mean "to be" as well as "to be in." *Ni te* is then the equivalent of *de atte* of the spoken language.

Examples:—

*Onore ha Chôin no hotori ni saburafu okina ni saburafu.* I am an old man who resides in the neighbourhood of Chôin.

*Ika naru hito?* What manner of man? [Lit., a how being man.]

*Wadono tachi ha idzuku no hito-bito ni ka?* What country-men are ye, my masters?

*Kono atari ni te.* In this neighbourhood.

*Fudokoro naru fue.* A flute which was in his bosom.

*Ni* may often be conveniently regarded as the sign of the predicate of a proposition.

In the semi-Chinese style *wo shite* or *wo motte* sometimes takes the place of *ni,* as *shinra wo motte nani nani wo shirasshimuru,* "to make so and so known to your servants."

*Ni* is added to indeclinable words to form adverbs, as *jiki ni,* "quickly"; *muri ni,* "violently," "wrongfully."

*Ni* is used with causative verbs to distinguish the person who is caused to perform the action, and with passive verbs to indicate the person by whom the action is performed. The phrases used in the *Kayohi-ji* for "causative" and "passive" are examples of this use of *ni.*

*Ta ni shikasasuru.* Causing another to be or do so and so.

*Ta ni shikaseraruru.* Being caused by another to be or do so and so.
Other examples of *ni*:

* Makoto ni.  
  In truth.  
* Sumiyaka ni.  
  Immediately.  
* Mutsu ni wakaruru.  
  To be divided into six.  
* Idzure no toki ni?  
  At what time?  
* Uta yomu ni.  
  In composing poetry.  
* Kane ni naru.  
  To become metal.  
* Dai ni tsukuru.  
  To make into a table.  
* Onodzukara naru mono ni shite.  
  Making it to (i.e., accounting it) a thing which is produced of itself.  
* Sore ni.  
  In addition to that.  
* Koto ni yorite.  
  According to circumstances.  
* Oya ni kandō seraru.  
  He was disowned by his parents.

*To* is sometimes used in the same signification as *ni* in the example *kane ni naru* quoted above.

Ex.: *Hito to naru,* “to become a man,” “to attain to manhood.”

*He,* “towards.”

*He* not being considered a separate word from the noun to which it is joined is pronounced *e* by the rule given at p. 2. It is really a noun meaning “place,” “direction,” as in *ihe,* “a house,” from *i,* root of *iru,* “to dwell,” and *he,* “place”; *yuku he,* “the direction in which to go.” It has taken the *nigori* in the compounds *hamabe,* “the shore”; *nobe,* “the moor”; *umibe,* “the sea-side.”

*He* is often confounded by careless speakers and writers of Japanese with *ni,* “to.” The former is properly used only of motion in the direction of, the latter of motion up to. Thus *kita he yuku,* “to travel northwards,” is the correct expression, and not *kita ni yuku.*
Example of he:—
Mine he fumoto he ori nobori. Sometimes ascending towards the summit, sometimes descending towards the base.

Made indicates a limit arrived at, and may be translated "until," "as far as," "as much as," "as many as," "to such a degree," &c.
Examples:—

Jiugo nich'i made. Until the 15th.
Karasu no atama shiroku naru made. Until a crow's head becomes white.
Yokohama made. As far as Yokohama.
Michi no naki made. To such a degree that there was no road.

Gari is an old word occasionally found in poetry. It has the same meaning as he.
Examples of gari:—

Kimi gari.

Towards you.
Hito no gari ifubeki koto arite
fumi woo yaru. Having something to say to some one, I send a letter.
Hashi woo uma koshiganete,
kokoro nomi imo gari yarite,
wa ha kokoni shite. My horse being unable to cross the bridge, I remain here, my heart alone I send towards thee.

Accusative Case.

Wo, the ordinary sign of the accusative case, was probably in its origin an interjection of the same meaning with the English "O!" It has this sense in sono yahe gaki wo! "O! that eight-fold barrier!" a phrase which occurs in one of the oldest extant specimens of the Japanese language.

In the monogatari we find instances of wo as an interjection in answer to a call or command, something like the English "Halloa!" or "Aye, aye, Sir!"
Example:—
Wo to te (for to ihi te) tachinu. "Aye, aye, Sir," said he, and started off.

Intermediate between its use as an interjection and as the sign of the accusative case may be placed those instances where wo seems to be merely an emphatic particle, of much the same force as a significant emphasis or pause over the word. This is perhaps why Motowori calls it a yasume-teniwoha or "pause particle" when used in this way.

Example:—
Samidare no
Tsuki no honokani
Miyuru yo ha,
Hototogisu dani
Sayaka ni wo nake.

Wo has here the force of drawing attention to the antithesis between the faint shining of the moon and the distinct singing of the bird.

The same wo is also found after verbs.

Example:—
Yomosugara
Mite wo akasan

Aki no tsuki;
Ko-yohi no sora ni
Kumo nakaranan.

The wo here marks an emphasis on mite.

Akin to this force of wo is its meaning in sentences like the following:—
Shira-tsuyu no
Iro ha hitotsu wo—
Ikani shite
Aki no konoha wo
Chiji ni somuran?

On this night, when the moon of the 5th month is seen faintly, do thou, at any rate, O, hototogisu! sing distinctly.

All night long
Having seen thee I would watch till morning
O moon of autumn!
On the sky of to-night
May there be no cloud.

Of the clear dew
The colour being but one—
How then can it be that
The leaves of autumn
A thousand-fold it dyes?
Wo has in this case an adversative force very much like the English "but," "though," "notwithstanding."

Mono wo. When wo follows mono, preceded by a verb or adjective in the attributive form, it has commonly the meaning just described.

Example:—

*Miyako* idete
*Kimi ni ahan to
*Koshi mono wo—
*Koshi kahi mo naku,
Wakarenuru kana.

Setting forth from the capital, That I might meet you,
I have come hither, *but*
My coming having been fruitless,
Alas! we are parted.

By far the most common use of *wo* is as the sign of the accusative case. This case is, however, by no means invariably indicated by *wo*. It is not found when the noun is governed by a preposition, or when it forms, along with a governing verb, an equivalent to a single verb, as in *riōji suru,* "to treat medically," *kemi suru,* "to examine," and is omitted in many other cases. In fact it is only used when it is desired, to mark distinctly the case of the noun.

Examples of *wo*.

*Kono ko* wo mitsukete nochi ni take wo toru ni fushi wo hedatete yogoto ni kogane aru take wo mitsukuru.

After discovering this child in collecting bamboos, he every night found bamboos containing gold on separating the joints.

*Takara* wo ushinahi, *yamahi wo mauku* (pron. *moku*).

He loses his money, and contracts disease.

*Kono chigo yashinafu hodo ni*. [Accus. without *wo*].

In proportion as they nurtured this infant.

*Wo* is frequently found in Japanese where in English a preposition would be used.
Examples:—

Miyako wo tohomi.

Hito wo wakaru.

Ohoji wo yorobohi yukite.

Ó-dan wo yamu.

Other particles sometimes come between the noun and wo, as—

Kushi to kanzashi to wo nuku. To remove comb and hair-pin.

Kore bakari wo shiru. He knows this only.

In poetry, and in the semi-Chinese style, wo is sometimes seen at the end of a sentence. In such cases an inversion of the construction has taken place, or an ellipsis has to be filled up.

Example:—

Hisokani negafu—yûshi kono tairi ni gyaku sezaran koto wo.

Wo ba. The ba of this combination is the ordinary distinctive particle ha with the nigori. Both particles have here their ordinary meaning.

Example:—

Hito tsuku ushi wo ba, tsuno wo kiri, hito kifu taka wo ba, mimi wo kirite, sono shirushi to su.

We cut off the horns of an ox which butts at people, and cut the ears of a falcon which bites people, as a mark of their vice.

It will be observed that the last sentence is an example of a double accusative, a construction familiar to us in Latin and Greek.

In the semi-Chinese style wo mochite (motte) or wo shite is often put for ni or wo only.
Vocative Case.

The vocative case is rarely indicated by any specific particle, but when necessary one of the particles yo, ya, or yayo may be added to the noun. Example:—

Jinta yo! Jinta yo! to yohitte yamazu.

He never ceased calling out, "Jinta! Jinta!"

Ablative Case.

Yori, kara, "from," "since." Yori is the root of the verb yoru, "to approach," "to relate to," but this meaning is forgotten in its familiar use as a suffix meaning "from." Yo and yu are ancient poetical forms for yori. Yori may be translated "than" when used in phrases like the following, where in English the comparative degree of the adjective is employed: sakura yori mume ha hayaku saku “the plum blossoms earlier than the cherry.” Kara cannot be used for yori in such a position.

Kara does not differ in meaning from yori. It is curious that whereas it has become nearly obsolete in the later written language, the spoken language uses it almost to the exclusion of yori.

In the old language no is often put between kara and its noun, the reason being, no doubt, that kara was originally a noun itself. A similar construction is observable in the compounds te-dzu-kara and ono-dzu-kara, "of oneself."

Kara ni of the old language does not differ in meaning from kara alone.

Mono kara has much the same force as nagara, as in the following example:—

Itsuhari to
Omofu mono kara—
Ima sara ni
Taga makoto zo ka
Ware ha tanoman?

False
While I think it,
Just now
In whose truth
Shall I put my trust?
Examples of yori and kara:

**Mukashi yori.**
From antiquity.

**Muma kuruma yori otsuru.**
To fall from a horse or carriage.

**Ohosaka yori.**
From Osaka.

**Oya yori ukuru.**
To receive from one's parents.

**Kore kara.**
From here.

**Kohishiki yori ha, uki ha mono ka ha?**
Compared with love, is misery aught?

**Kore yori hokani.**
Other than this.

**Fune no he yu mo tomo yu mo.**
Both from the ship's stem and stern.

**On inochi wo rochiu ni suterubeki yori.**
Rather than fling away your life into the road.

II. PLURAL SUFFIXES.

*Ra* may be used either with persons or with things, as *arera,* "they"; *korera,* "these things"; *nanjira,* "you." *Ra* implies neither respect nor the reverse. It is therefore little used with nouns or pronouns in the second person.

In the old language there are instances of *ra* joined to nouns in the singular. For instance, the *Manyōshū* has *kora,* *imora* where only one person is meant. This is, however, exceptional.

With adverbs of place, *ra* gives an idea of greater indefiniteness. *Kokora,* for instance means "hereabouts"; *achira,* "somewhere there."

*Domo* (from *tomo,* "a companion") is a very common plural particle in the old language, where it is used for both persons and things, as *mushi-domo,* "insects"; *koto-domo,* "things." In the modern language it is mostly found with pronouns or nouns (not inanimate things) in the first or third person.

In the modern language *watakushidomo* and *midomo* are sometimes used where only one person is meant.
Tachi (in the later language also dachi) is used with nouns or pronouns in the second person, or in speaking respectfully of any one, as miko tachi, "princes"; oya tachi or oya dachi, "parents."

Gata (from kata, "side") is similar in meaning to tachi. It belongs to the later language. Ex. : Omahe-gata, "you."

Bara is little used.

Examples:—
Hōshi bara no ni san nin. Two or three priests.
Otoko womina bara. Men and women.

Nado or nando (from nani to) is sometimes called a plural particle. Its meaning is rather that of the Latin et cetera.

Examples:—
Kaze no oto, mushi no ne nado
ito-ahare nari. The sound of the wind, and the cries of the insects, &c., are very touching.

Shokudai, tsukue, kōro nando
no yōi wo shite. Having made ready candlestick, table, incense-pot, &c.

Shiu is a Chinese word which is sometimes found in the later language as a plural particle, as kodomo shiu, "children"; yakunin shiu, "officials."

Tō is sometimes a plural particle, and sometimes, like nado, resembles the Latin et cetera.

Examples:—
Mōri Daigaku no Kami tō. Mōri Daigaku no Kami and others.

Sho hanshi tō. Samurai of the various Han.

Su and sho. The plural is implied by the use of such Chinese prefixes as su or su, "several"; sho, "various," but the combinations of these particles with monosyllabic Chinese words, as in su-nin, "several persons," sho-koku, "the various countries," belong to Chinese rather than to Japanese grammar.
Examples of Plural Particles:

Kodomo ra or kodomo shiu. Children.
Nanjira. You.
Aru tokoro no samurahi domo. The samurai of a certain place.
Kono hito domo wakaregataku omofu. I felt it hard to part with these men.

III. OTHER SUFFIXES.

Ha. This particle is not looked upon as a separate word from the noun to which it is joined, and is accordingly read wa, according to the rule by which aspirates are not pronounced in the middle of a word. [See page 22.]

Ha may be termed a separative or distinguishing particle. Its force is thus described in the Kotodama no Shirube: “Ha ha isasaka nageku kokoro wo obite, mono ni mare, koto ni mare, aru ga naka yori eri-wakuru yo no kokoro moteru teniwoha nari.” I.e., “Ha has somewhat of an exclamatory force, and is a particle which possesses the meaning, as it were, of choosing out and separating a thing or an action from amongst a number.”

In English, ha may sometimes be translated “with respect to,” “in the case of,” “in so far as regards,” “at any rate,” or its meaning may be given by printing in italics the word to which it refers. The French “quant à” expresses its force pretty accurately. In most cases, however, ha cannot be rendered in translation, and its force is often so slight that its presence or absence makes no appreciable difference in the meaning. In speaking, a significant emphasis is often the best equivalent.

Ex.: Ware ha to omohi. Thinking I (am somebody).
Kore to ha chigafu. It is different from this.
Kono tokoro he ha kitarazu. He has not come here at any rate.
Ha has been called the sign of the nominative case. It is quite true that it often does distinguish the subject of a sentence, but this is merely by virtue of its general force as a distinguishing or separating particle. A suffix which is used freely with nouns in the dative or objective case cannot properly be described as the sign of the nominative.

Examples:

*Toki shiranu yama ha Fuji no ne (nari).
Ken ha kwako wo utagafu kotoba nari.*

The mountain which knows not time is the peak of Fuji. Ken is a word which expresses a doubt concerning the past.

In the phrase Akashi no ura ha? “In regard to the Bay of Akashi?” or “What about the Bay of Akashi?” ha looks like an interrogative particle. The sentence is, however, really incomplete, and some such words as *ika naru tokoro naru? “What sort of a place is it?” require to be supplied. In *Sono fumi no kotoba ha to tofu, “‘What is the language of that letter?’ asked he,” a similar ellipsis has to be filled up.

*Ha* is used not only to single out an object from among a number, but to contrast or oppose one object to another. The Greek — μεν — δε would accordingly be in Japanese — *ha* — *ha*.

Examples:

*Hito ha isa!*
*Kokoro mo shirazu;*
*Furuzato ha*
*Hana zo mukashi no*
*Ka ni niiho-keru.*

*Its people—ah no!*
*I know not their hearts:*
*But in my native place*
*The flowers with their ancient*
*Fragrance are odorous.*

*Miyama ni ha*
*Matsu no yuki dani*
*Kienaku ni*

*Deep in the mountains*
*E’en the snow on the fir trees*
*Has not yet melted—*
On the moors by the capital
We have plucked the young herbs.

In the first of these two sentences the has point the contrast between the inhabitants and the place itself; in the second, between the mountains where the season is late, and the capital where it is early.

When ha is suffixed to an interrogative word or particle, it shows that the question is merely rhetorical, and not for information, and that a negative answer is expected. But if the question already contains a negative, an affirmative reply is suggested. Thus, while ikaga sen merely puts the question, “What is to be done?” which may or may not be merely rhetorical according to the context, ikaga ha sen is only another way of saying “there is nothing to be done,” “there is no help for it.” In the same way Ware hitori ka? “Am I the only person?” may be either a question asked for information or an indignant way of denying that one is the only person. But if we say ware hitori ka ha, the question can only be a rhetorical one, and the answer “No!” necessarily follows.

This rule holds good throughout the greater part of Japanese literature. In the pre-classical period, however, ha is found with interrogatives without any meaning of this kind, and the rule is not often exemplified in modern literature, which is comparatively sparing in its use of particles.

Examples:—

Kohishiki yori ha uki ha mono ka ha?
Nuru ga uchi
Miru wo nomi ya ha
Yume to ihan—
Hakanaki yo wo mo
Utsutsu to mizu.

Compared with love, is misery aught?
Shall we call that alone a dream which we see while sleeping? — this vain world also I look not upon as reality.
Namida ya ha!
Mata mo afubeki

Tsumu naran—
Naku yori hoka no
Nagusame so naki.

Itsu ka ha mafushi ayamaritaru?

What? Tears! He is
doubtless a husband whom
I shall meet again—
Other than weeping
Consolation I have none.
When did I ever inform you
wrongly?

In the later language ani at the beginning of an interroga-
tive clause shows that a negative reply is expected.
The case suffixes and the interrogative particles ka and ya
are placed between ha and the noun. Where wo intervenes,
ha takes the nigorl and becomes ba. This is owing to the
dislike which the Japanese language has for allowing two
successive syllables to begin with the same consonant.

Example:—
Hito tsuku ushi wo ba, tsuno
wo kiri; hito kufu taka wo
ba, mimi wo kiru.

We cut off the horns of an ox
which butts at people; we
cut off the ears of a falcon
which bites people.

Mo is the opposite of ha. Kore ha, for instance, means
“this separated or distinguished from something else”; kore
mo means “this along with something else,” and may be
translated “too,” “also,” “even.”

Examples:—
Kono ho ni mo.
Uhe ni mo iheru gotoku.
Sono koro made mo.
Ifubeki ni mo arazu.

On this side also.
As has been stated above also.
Even up till that time.
It is not necessary even to
mention.

Where mo is repeated with each of two successive nouns
the meaning is “both—and—.”

Example:—
Kono yo mo, nochi no yo mo.
Kozo mo kotoshi mo.

Both this world and the next.
Both last year and this year.
Mo after an interrogative particle has often a force opposite to that of ha in the same position, and indicates that an affirmative answer is expected if the question is affirmative, and a negative answer if the question is negative in form. For example—

*Tayuru hi arame ya ha?* is “Will there be a day when it will cease? [by no means]” but *Tayuru hi arame ya mo?* is “Will there ever be a day when it will cease? [I trust so].”

A somewhat similar use of *mo* is where it converts interrogative pronouns and adverbs into indefinite. Thus by the addition of *mo*, *tare*, “who,” becomes *tare mo*, “any one;” *itsu*, “when,” becomes *itsu mo*, “at any time;” “always;” and *nani*, “what,” becomes *nani mo*, “anything.”

Especially in the old language *mo* is in many cases nothing more than a feeble interjection of surprise for which there is no adequate English equivalent.

Example:—

*Kakaru hito mo yo ni ide ohasuru mono nari-keri.* Even such a man is a thing which appears in the world, i.e. There are such men as this in the world.

*Mo* is contracted with *are*, the imperative of *aru*, “to be,” into *mare*, as in the phrase *Idsure ni mare*, “Be it whichever it may”; *Mi mare mizu mare*, “Be it that I see, be it that I do not see,” i.e. “whether I see or not.”

*Mo ga mo or mo ka mo, mo ga na, mo ga mo na* express a strong desire.

Examples:—

*Amabashi no nagaku mo ga mo.* I pray that the bridge of heaven may last long.

*Takaku tobu tori ni mo ga mo (narite)* A high-soaring Bird—Oh! that I could become,
Asu yuitae
Imo ni kotodohi.
Otokonowominanomikade
tukumiyakoheonomuna
toomofukokororeba.

That I might go to-morrow
And visit my love.
As both men and women
were eager to reach the
capital as soon as possible.

The case suffixes and the interrogative particles ka and ya
are placed between mo and the noun.

Ka and ya. In Japanese no change of construction is
required in order to convert an affirmative clause into an
interrogative one. All that is necessary is to suffix one of
the particles ka or ya.

The force of ka or ya varies somewhat according to circum-
stances, being referable to one of the following heads:—

1. A question for information.
2. A merely rhetorical question.
3. A doubt.
4. A mere exclamation, of much the same force as the
sign "!"

Ka is chiefly used in the first sense, but is also common in
meanings 2 and 3. Followed by mo, it occurs in the Man-
yoshiiu as a mere interjection. In the combination kana it has
also usually an exclamatory force, though it occasionally
retains its interrogative meaning.

Ya seldom marks a question asked for information; its
force is almost entirely restricted to the other three heads.

Examples of ka:—

1. Kono hito ni ko ha aru ka,
naki ka?
Konnichi ka?

Has this man children or
not?
Is it to-day?

2. Kono kado no mahe yori
shimowatarumono ka?
Sono kinsei gaen subeki ka?

How is it possible for me to
pass before this door?
Is one to agree to this pro-
hibition?
3. Kahabe no hotaru ka; ama no taku hi ka?
Idzure no ohon toki ni ka ariken.
Mitsu ka hitotsu ka ni te mo aran.
4. Osoroshiki kana! Kana-shika kana!
Hito no kokoro oroka naru mono kana!
Mikasa no yama ni ideshi tsuki ka mo!

Examples of ya:—

1. Migi ha ika narujiko naru ya?
Jicho ya aru?
2. Ani kore zo sassezaru-beken ya?
3. Hana ya momiji zo miru.
Kore ya to omofu.
Oya ya shinrui.
Saru ni mo ya rui subeshi.
Ame tsuyoku shite, hashi ochikeru ni ya—

4. Ana! mendō ya!
Ureshi ya!
Jinta ya!

Is it a firefly on the river bank, or a fire kindled by the fishermen?
In what august time (i.e., reign) will it have been?
[I do not know.]
It may perhaps be three or one.
How dreadful! How lamentable!
Alas! what a stupid thing the heart of man is!
The moon that hath come forth over the mountain of Mikasa!

What is the cause of this?

Have you an attendant?
Is it likely that he does not perceive this?
To look at the flowers or red leaves of autumn.
I think it is perhaps this.
Parents or relations.
He is perhaps to be classed even with monkeys.
Whether it was that the bridge had fallen on account of heavy rains—
Oh! what a bother!
How joyful!
Jinta!
Mimasaka ya! Kumenosara yama.

Mimasaka! Nay, rather let me speak of the Kumenosara mountain.

Ka added to interrogative pronouns and adverbs usually, but not always, makes them indefinite, as tare, “who,” tare ka, “somebody,” itsu, “when,” itsu ka, “at some time or another.” At the end of a clause which begins with an interrogative, Motowori rules that ka is the proper particle to use and not ya, except the latter has its exclamatory force, as nani zo ya? “What is it?” In the modern language, however, little attention is paid to this rule, and especially in indirect interrogative clauses, ya is almost always found instead of ka.

In the modern semi-Chinese style ya often represents the Chinese 也, especially after the opening words of a chapter or paragraph. It has here its exclamatory force, and draws the attention of the reader strongly to the subject-matter which is about to be discussed. Thus an article on adoption begins as follows: Yōshi no shiukwan taru ya—"With regard to the custom of adopted children—"

Ya followed by aran (fut. of aru) is usually contracted into yaran, which in the spoken language, and occasionally in the popular written style, is further shortened into yara.

Nan is probably the same particle as the na, nā, nô or ne (Yedo dialect) of the spoken language. It is an emphatic exclamation drawing the attention strongly to the word which precedes. It resembles, but is a less emphatic word than so. Nan is perhaps the future of the obsolete verb mu, “to be,” inserted parenthetically in the sentence. Namo is an old form which occurs in the Manyôshū and other old books.

Examples of nan:

Kore nan sore to utsusemini kashi.
Kore nan ume to shirinuru.

I would like to see this exchanged for that.
I found that this was a plum.
Katachi yori ha kokoro nan masari-taru. Her heart was more excellent than her beauty.

Zo is an emphatic particle. The Kotodama no Shirube describes it as “a particle which limits and narrows things, or represents them, as it were, taken up and held in the hand,” and adds that “it is opposed to ya in meaning.” Very often the best way to translate zo is to change the construction of the sentence in the manner shown in the following examples.

Examples of zo:—

Oya no kokoro yasume-shidzumete zo mata ide ni keru. It was not until he had quieted and calmed his parents’ hearts that he again went out.

Kore zo tadashiki yomizama naru. It is this that is the correct mode of reading.

Kara no uta ni mo kaku zo arubeki. This is probably true in the case of Chinese poetry too.

Koso resembles zo in meaning, but it is a still more emphatic word. It is probably derived from ko, “this,” and so, “that.” The Ayuhisha says of the sentence yone koso yokere, “it is rice and rice only that is good,” that yone no hoka ha nashi to ifu nari, i.e., “this is saying that there is nothing else but rice (that is good).” The same authority further says of koso that it has the force of choosing out and rejecting other things, and of taking up in the hand and looking at the object to which it refers. Kore koso may therefore be translated, “This and nothing else,” “This more than aught else,” “This very thing.” Koso and nan are very common particles in the naka mukashi, or later classical period, but are less frequently met with in the modern language.

Koso is sometimes seen at the end of a sentence. In such cases a verb has to be supplied after it.
Examples:—
Ahi-min koto nomi koso (omohe).
Hana chirazu ari koso (hoshikere).

Examples of koso:—
Yorodzu no yamahi ha sake yori koso okore.
Mukashi ha “ame no shita” to nomi koso ihere.

Tsutsu ha tsu no teniwoha wo kasanetaru mono ni koso are.
Hórai no ki ka to koso omohitsure.
Masame ni kimi wo ahi-miteba koso, waga kohi yamaname.

To is a conjunctive particle. With nouns it may mostly be translated “and,” “with,” “along with,” as in the examples kare to ware, “he and I,” kimi to yuku, “to go along with you.”

Analogous to the use of to with verbs as equal to the English conjunction “that” in introducing indirect narration is its use after nouns when followed by one of the five verbs miru, “to see”; kiku, “to hear”; omofu, “to think”; suru, “to do”; and ifu, “to say.” To ifu is often contracted, especially in poetry, into tefu (pron. chô), chifu (chiu), or tofû (tô). To often stands after nouns where one of the five verbs mentioned above must be supplied in order to complete the sense. Thus
to te often stands for to ihite or to omohite; to yo for to miyo or to seyo; to so for to ifu so; to naraba for to ifu koto naraba; to dani for to ifu koto dani, &c.

Where adverbial expressions are formed by adding to to uninflected words, as in haru baru to, “from a distance,” hiso hiso to, “quietly,” shite is to be understood after to.

Taru, preceded by a noun, as in the phrase shiunjin taru hito, “a man who is a master,” is a contraction for to aru. This form is rarely found in poetry, and never occurs in the more ancient language.

Examples of to:—

**Hito no kotoba to midzukara no kotoba.**
Another’s words and one’s own words.

**Kore to chigafu.**
It is different from this.

**Ame to furu (poetical).**
To fall like rain.

**Yuki to chiru sakura no hana.**
The cherry flowers which scatter like snow.

**Natsu to aki to.**
Both summer and autumn.

**Rusui to sadanuru.**
To appoint rusui.

**Oya to miru.**
To regard as a parent.

**Ko taru (for to-aru) mono.**
One who is a child.

**Dzutsu** means “at a time,” “apiece,” as in the following examples:—

**Hitori dzutsu iru.**
To enter, one person at a time.

**Tori no ko towo dzutsu.**
Young birds ten at a time.

**Mina ni yotsu dzutsu atayuru.**
To give them all four apiece.

**Goto ni, “each,” “every”—as tabi goto ni, “every time”; tsuki goto ni, “each month.”**

**Dani** with an affirmative means “at least,” “at any rate,” “if no more,” and with a negative, “even,” “so much as.” It is used where something less than might have been expected is spoken of, as in the following examples:—
Sore wo mite dani kaheriran.

Moji to ifu mono wo katachi wo dani mitaru koto mo nakari-ken.
Ichimonji dani shiranu mono.

Ke hito suji wo dani ugokashi tatematsurai.

Sura may also be translated “even,” but it is used where something is introduced more than might have been expected, as in the examples:

Haruka no nochi, Nara no koro no sho ni sura.
Seijin sura.

Sake (pronounced saye) is connected with the verb sofuru (root sohe), meaning “to associate,” “to join to,” and in the old language it means “also,” “in addition,” as in the examples:

Hito futa no
Me nomi ni arazu:
Itsutsu mutsu
Mitsu yotsu sahe ari—
Suguroku no sae.

Hannen amari nógió wo nasu, ihe ni mo rōbō sahe ari.

In the colloquial language and in the later written language, sahe is used instead of dani and sura.

Shi is a particle of very little meaning which is sometimes found after nouns. “Only” is a little like it.
Examples of shi:—

Kimi kofuru namida shi nakuba. If there were only no tears of longing for you.
Shika shi araba. If this were only so.
Hôshô no ori shi mo. Even at the time of the Emperor's death.

Onore shi.

Nomî and bakari, "only," "no more than."

Examples:—

Mutsu bakari. Only six.
Kimi nomi. You only.

Bakari is derived from hakaru, "to weigh," and originally meant "quantity," in which sense it is frequently used by old writers, as in the example Hito bakari kishashiki ha nashi, "there is no animal so long-lived as man."

The style imitated from the Chinese puts nomi at the end of a sentence in a meaningless way. Motowori condemns this.

Gachi or gachi ni, also gochi, "all over."

Examples:—

Hige gachi ni yase-yase naru otoko. A lean fellow all over beard.
Suzuro ni namida gachi nari. She became unconsciously bathed in tears.
Hana hirake-hatezu, tsubomi gachi ni miyu. The flowers have not unfolded completely, but seem all over buds.

Nagara means that the object to which it applies is taken without any change or modification.
Examples:—

Tabi no sugata nagara. In his travelling dress as he was.

Tsuyu wo eda nagara miyo. Look at the dew as it lies on the branch.

Datera resembles nagara in meaning.
Example: Oi-bito datera, “old man as he is.”

Gatera, “by way of.” Example: Katami gatera to okosetaru koromo, “the clothing sent by way of keepsake.”
CHAPTER VI.

UNINFLECTED TENIWOHA SUFFIXED TO KOTOBÄ.

This chapter gives an account of the more common suffixes attached to inflected words, classified according to the part of the verb or adjective to which they are joined. Some suffixes are attached to more parts of the verb than one, but in such cases there is a difference of meaning or application. It is to be noted that these particles may be added not only to the principal parts of verbs or adjectives, but to the corresponding parts of those teniwoha which admit of inflection.

It is impossible to notice all the different combinations of teniwoha. Some of the more common are explained in the following pages, and it is believed that the others will present little difficulty to the student who has mastered the meaning of the several teniwoha of which they are composed.

Few teniwoha are joined immediately to adjectives. The auxiliary verb aru is usually interposed. Thus for hoshikuzu we must say hoshikarazu, “he is not desirous”; for yoku keri, yokari-keri, &c. In such cases the u final of the adjective is elided.

The initial consonant of those particles which are added to the negative base and to the perfect takes the nigori; particles added to other forms remain unchanged.

I. UNINFLECTED TENIWOHA ADDED TO THE ADVERBIAL FORM.

The adverbial form is sometimes a noun, and as such may be followed by most of the particles described in the previous chapter. Amongst those which occur most frequently in this position are ni, ha, mo, to, and nagara.
Ni. The commonest signification of *ni* following a verb in this form is "in order to," as in the phrases *mi ni*, "in order to see": *yobi ni kitareri*, "he came to summon." *Ni* also occurs after the adverbial form in such idiomatic phrases as *akire ni akirete*, "extremely amazed"; *isami ni isamite*, "very eager."

*Ha.* When *ha* follows the adverbial form of adjectives, it has sometimes the same meaning as it has when suffixed to nouns, i.e. that of a distinctive or separative particle. It may also have the meaning "if" (conditional future), but in that case *ba* is more commonly written.

Examples:—

*Sono katana nibuku ha araji.* That sword will not be blunt (whatever else it may be).

*Nawo nogare-gataku ha.* A thing which it is still more difficult to escape from.

*Onajiku ha waga shomô no katana tamaharitenya.* If it will be the same (to you), will you please give me the sword which I desire.

*Ha* after *zu*, the adverbial form of the negative suffix, has the force of a conditional, as *yô sezu ha*, "if one did not take care," but in this position most later writers prefer to write *ba*.

*Ha* after *te*, the adverbial form of the suffix *tsuru*, has its ordinary force as a separative particle.

*Mo* is frequently found with the adverbial form of both verbs and adjectives. Here it may usually be translated "even." It is particularly common after *te*, as *shiri-te mo*, "even knowing," *iki-te mo*, "even having gone." *Mo* sometimes comes between the two parts of a compound verb, as *ihi mo oharazu*, "not even finishing what he was saying."

*To* is found with the adverbial form of verbs in idiomatic phrases like *ari to aru*, "as many as there are," *kiki to kiku hito*, "all who may hear."
Nagara has a similar meaning after verbal roots to that which it has after nouns.

Examples:—

Umare nagara no katawamonio. In the same state in which he was born, a cripple, i.e., a cripple from his birth.

I nagara teki wo matsu. Remaining at rest to await the enemy.

I nagara no ikusa. A defensive warfare.

Yorube to ha omohi nagara. Though still looking on it as a source of help.

Gatera, “by way of.” Ex.: Imashime gatera ni ifu koto “something said by way of reproof.”

Gachini or gochini. With verbs, this suffix may be translated “constantly.”

Examples:—

Kaheri-mi gachi ni ide tama-hinu. He went away constantly looking behind him.

On naka mo hedatari gachi ni te. Being also constantly on bad terms.

Mono home gachi. Always praising things.

The following particles are found in conjunction with verbs only.

Tsutsu indicates that the action of the verb to which it is joined is simultaneous with that of the verb following. When tsutsu occurs at the end of a sentence, as it often does in poetry, an ellipsis must be supplied, or the order of the sentence has been inverted. The Kotodama no Shirube thus distinguishes between tsutsu and te: “The sentence Otoni kiki te kohi-wataru is equivalent to Otoni kiki te nochini kohi-wataru, but Otoni kiki tsutsu kohi-wataru is equivalent to Otoni kiku to onaji toki ni kohi-wataru.”
Examples of tsutsu:—
Aru mono to (omohite) wa-
sure tsutsu, naki hito wo
tofu.

Midzu no uheni asobi-tsutsu
uwo wo kufu.

—mi —mi resembles the ——tari ——tari of the
spoken language.
Examples:—
Haremi kumorimi.
Nakimi warahimi.
Kaminadzuki furumi furas-
zumi sadame naki shigure
zo fuyu no hajime naru.

——tsu ——tsu also corresponds to the ——tari ——tari
of the spoken language.
Example:—
Ikusa ha kiritsu kiraretsu
suru mono nari.

Na——so. The negative of the imperative mood is in the
old classical Japanese formed from the adverbial form by
prefixing na and adding so.
Examples:—
Na yuki so.*
Na yaki so.

At the same time that he for-
gets and thinks that they
are still alive, he inquires
after dead persons.
It feeds on fish at the same
time that it sports on the
surface of the water.

Becoming alternately clear
and cloudy.
Alternately weeping and
smiling.

It is the unsettled, showery
weather of the tenth month,
sometimes rainy, sometimes
fine, which is the beginning
of winter.

* For which the modern language would say yuku nakare.
"Kefu nami na tachi so" to  Everybody prayed—may the
hito-bito inoru. waves not arise to-day!
Ware wo hito na togame so. Let not people blame me.

The last two examples show that the imperative is by no
means confined to the second person.

Yo is in the second and third conjugations added to the
adverbial form, and in the irregular verb suru, to the negative
base, as the sign of the Imperative Mood. Except by
ignorant writers of the present day, yo is not used to form
the Imperative in the First Conjugation, but it may be placed
after it by way of giving additional emphasis, as in the
example Tore yo kashi, “Do take it, I pray you.” This is
however, a very exceptional use of yo. A yo of this kind may
occur even after a negative imperative, as wasurume yo, “be,
sure not to forget.”

Examples of yo :—

Mi yo. Look!
Tabe yo. Eat!

II. UNINFLECTED TENIWOHA ADDED TO CONCLUSIVE
FORM.

Rashi is connected with the adjectival termination rashiki,
which it resembles in meaning. It is, however, indeclinable,
and has always the force of the conclusive, and never of the
attributive form. It has the same meaning as sōna of the
spoken language, as in the phrase ame ga furu sōna, “it is
likely to rain,” which would be in the written language ame
furu rashi.

There can be little doubt that rashi is really added to the
attributive form, and that the final ru which distinguishes
this form in verbs of the second conjugation has been
dropped for reasons of euphony. The final syllable of the
perfect forms in ri is also dropped before rashi.
Example of *rashi*:

*Haru sugite*

  *Natsu kitaru rashi;*

  *Shirotehe no*

  *Koromo hoshitari,*  
  *Amenokaguryama.*

Spring seems to have passed away, and summer to have come, for the white garments are spread out to dry on Mt. Amenokagu.

*To* corresponds to the English conjunction "that,"* and is the sign of quotation, or of indirect narration. It may be placed not only after the conclusive forms of verbs and adjectives, but after any word which is capable of standing at the end of a sentence.

As has been explained above (p. 129) there is often an ellipsis after *to* of one of the five verbs *miru,* "to see"; *kiku,* "to hear"; *omofu,* "to think"; *suru,* "to do"; and *ifu,* "to say," either in the substantive form or in the adverbial form with *te* added. This is often the key to a difficult construction.

In the modern language, as for instance in newspapers, the following construction is not uncommon. First we have some such phrase as *Aru kisha ihaku,* "A certain writer observes," or *Hisokani kikeri,* "I have heard privately." Then follows the quotation, after which is the particle *to,* marking the end of it. *Iheri* or *kikeri* must of course be added to complete the sense, and the omission of these words is condemned by Motowori as a slavish imitation of a Chinese construction. In the modern language, however, *to* is continually used in this way by the best writers.

* There can be little doubt that, like its English equivalent, *to* was originally a demonstrative, and that it is identical with the *so* of *sore,* "that." It has still this meaning in the compound *to kaku,* "in that way or in this," and in the phrase *to mare kaku mare,* "be it in that way or in this." In many other cases *to* is best construed as equivalent to "this" or "thus."
Examples of to:—

Rashi ha sôna to ifu kokoro nari to iheri.
Kwaki nobin to suru ni.

Yukan to omofu.
Hidetsugu kô ni tsukahe tematsuran to (omofu) ni ha arazu.
Takara ohoki ha ni wo marnor ni gai ari to (ifu) ha kakaru koto wo mafusu.

Hito-guchi wo fusagan to (omohite).

Ya. Ya has the same variety of meanings after inflected words as it has after uninflected. [See p. 125.] It has sometimes an interrogative force and is at others a mere exclamation.

Examples of ya:—

Ari ya nashi ya?
Ito hadzukashiki waza narazu ya?
Ureshi ya!
Omohi no gotoku no notamafu ya!
Jitsu ni shikaru ya ina ya wo shirazu.
Kore wo miru ya ina ya, suguni kore wo yakushite—

He has said that the meaning of rashi is sôna.
The fiery element in its efforts to expand.
I am thinking of going.
It is not that I wish to enter Hidetsugu's service.
The saying that great riches are injurious in respect of self-protection was meant of occurrences like this.
Thinking that he would stop people's mouths.

Is there or is there not?
Is it not a very shameful thing?
How glad I am!
Your speech is even as my thought!

We did not know whether it was really so or not.
As soon as we saw it, we at once having translated it—

The last example contains a very common idiomatic use of ya. Miru ya ina ya literally means "while it is doubtful whether one sees it or not," i.e., "as soon as one sees it."
Kashi is a word which adds emphasis to what precedes. It is often used at the end of prayers to the Deity, where it means much the same as our "Amen." Kashi is doubtless nothing more than the conclusive form of kaku, "thus," and means literally "thus it is." It really stands by itself, and forms no part of the sentence.

Examples: —
Kokoni kuruma yori ori ha-berinu kashi. We here got down from the carriage.

It is difficult to give the force of kashi in this sentence, "Thank God" is perhaps a little near it.
Mo, yo, and na after the conclusive form are mere interjections.

All these particles, except rashii, are found after both adjectives and verbs in the conclusive form.

III. UNINFLECTED TENIWOWA ADDED TO ATTRIBUTIVE OR SUBSTANTIVE FORM.

As a noun, this form of the verb may be followed by any of the particles mentioned in the previous chapter.
Wo has ordinarily its usual force after this form of verbs and adjectives as the sign of the accusative case. It has, however, sometimes the same meaning as mono wo, i.e., "although," or "whilst." [See p. 115.] For this last wo, modern writers and the colloquial dialect have ga.
Ni is often found with the attributive form of the past suffix shi in the sense of "as" or "since." Kaze fukishi ni, "since the wind was blowing."
Kara, with verbs, means "after," as—
Oshimu kara kohishiki mono wo. Whereas it is after we regret things that they are dear to us.
Kaze no fukishi kara. After the wind blew.
Ka. The interrogative particle *ka* is suffixed to this form; as has been seen above, *ya* is added to the conclusive form.

*Na* added to the attributive form of the verb gives one form of the negative imperative of the written language and the sole form used in the spoken language, as *yuku* *na*, "do not go"; *taburu* *na*, "do not eat"; *miru* *na*, "do not look."

The *ru* final is, in one or two exceptional cases, dropped before this *na*, as *wasuru* *na*, "do not forget"; *ku* *na*, "do not come." The regular forms are also found.

The verb *aru*, "to be," has a negative imperative, or rather a substitute for one, formed by prefixing the negative adverb *naku*, "not," to the positive imperative *are*, thus giving the form *nakare*.

*Aku*, *keku*. In the old language there is a form which ends in *aku* in the case of verbs, and in *keku* in the case of adjectives. The difference in these endings is only apparent. They are identical in meaning, and may both be obtained by the following rule:—

**Rule.**—Add *aku* to attributive form, eliding the final *u* of verbs, and contracting the final *i* of adjectives with the *a* of *aku* into *e*. [See above, p. 24.] Thus, from *miru*, "to see," is formed *miraku*; from *kohishiki*, "dear," *kohishikeku*.

The termination *aku*, whose existence is here assumed, is not found in any other connexion, and its derivation is by no means obvious. The *a* may perhaps be the *a* of *aru*, "to be," and *ku* is possibly the same as the *ko* of *koto*. *Samukeku* would therefore be *samuki-aru-koto*; *miraku*, *miru-aru-koto*. At any rate this derivation corresponds well with the meaning, for this form is always a *noun*, and not an adverb or adjective, as the final *ku* might lead one to imagine. No such form exists as *samukeki*.

In a few verbs this form is in use even in the modern language, as *Kôshi no ihaku*, "the saying of Confucius"; *negahaku ha*, "that which I beg for."
Examples:—

Shi ga haha wo toraku wo shirazu.  
Mimaku no hoshisa.

They know not of the capture of their own mother.  
The wish to see.

In the last sentence *aku* is added to the attributive form *mu* of the future particle.

Nagekaku wo todome kanete—
Yokeku wo mireba.
Nuru yo ochizu

Not being able to restrain my lamentation—
As I see the goodness.  
At night when asleep without fail

In my dreams I see thee,  
But as in my waking hours  
This is not truly so,  
My longing  
Is heaped up a thousand-fold.  
I do not spare my horse.

*Ahoshiki*, the termination of desiderative adjectives in the old language, is contracted for *akuhoshiki*. It is added to the future suffix *mu*. Thus, *mimahoshiki*, "wishing to see," is *mi-mu-aku-hoshiki*; *yukamahoshiki*, "wishing to go," is *yuka-mu-aku-hoshiki*. These adjectives belong to the second conjugation.

Example:—

Ko wo oshiyuru hito ha kaku koso aramahoshikere.

It is of this kind alone that it is desirable that teachers of youth should be.

IV. UNINFLECTED TENIWOHA ADDED TO NEGATIVE BASE.

*Ba* with the negative base forms what may be called a future conditional tense. Thus *yukaba* means "if he shall go," "if he should go," or "were he to go." *Ba* is probably a contraction for *n*, the future suffix, and *ha*, which has in this
combination substantially the same meaning as described above, p. 120. The fact that the older language has *ha* instead of *ba* after the negative suffix *zu* and after adjectives confirms this derivation, as the future suffix is not found along with either of these forms. Later writers, however, following a false analogy, use *ba* for *ha* in these cases.

After adjectives *m* is sometimes inserted for the sake of euphony, as *yokumba* for *yokuba*, “if it should be good.”

In the *Manyōshū* forms like *yokaba* are found. The commentators say that *aba* is here a contraction for *araba*. *Yokaba* would therefore be for *yoku-araba*.

*Ba* has often an optative force, which is sometimes brought out more forcibly by adding the interjection *ya*, as in the sentence *hito ni misebaya*, “Oh! that I might show it to someone.”

Examples of *ba*:

*Tsuki ide ba.*

*If the moon should come forth.*

*Kore wo shirazu ba.*

*If he should not know this.*

*Ridōgoku ni sebaya to nozomu.*

*He wished to make it his own dominion.*

*Uguhisu no tani kara idzuru kohe naku ba.*

*Were it not for the note of the uguisu coming forth from the valley.*

*Saraba (for *sa-araba*).*

*Should that be so.*

*De* is a negative particle. Its grammar is that of a verb in the adverbial form, *It is equivalent to, and is perhaps a contraction for, *zu-te.* Another derivation makes it a contraction for *ni-te, ni* being here the old adverbial form of the negative suffix *nu*.

Example of *de*:

*Fukaki kokoro wo shirade ahi-gatashi.*

*It is impossible to meet him without knowing the depth of his heart.*
Ji is also a negative particle. Its grammar is that of a verb in the adverbial, conclusive, or attributive form. It is the negative corresponding to the future particle n or mu. Ji is the equivalent of mai of the spoken language, and of beka-razu of the later written language.

Examples:—
Makeji kokoro. A spirit that will not be vanquished.
Isshô no haji kore ni suguru ha araji. It is improbable that any disgraceful act of his whole life will surpass this.
Mukahe-ideji to ooshite. Thinking he would not go out to meet him.
Kon ya koji ya? Will he come or will he not?
Nan with the negative base must be distinguished from nan with the adverbial form. The latter is the future of nuru. Nan with the negative base is probably contracted for n of the future followed by nan described in the chapter on suffixes added to nouns. The form thus obtained has an optative signification. It is chiefly confined to poetry.

Examples:—
Kimi ga kokoro ware ni tokenan. Would that your heart were melted unto me!
Kami ni tamuke suru nusa no ohi-kaze yamazu fukanan. May the favouring breeze of (i.e. granted by reason of) the fillets offered to the god blow without ceasing!

De, ji, and nan do not occur after adjectives.

V. UNINFLECTED TENIWOHA ADDED TO PERFECT.

Ba with the Perfect is the same separative particle ha (with the nigori) already described at p. 120. Yukeba, for instance, will therefore mean "in the case that he has gone," "in respect to his having gone," and ba in these forms may usually be
rendered by one of the conjunctions "since," "when," "whereas," "because."

Ya after this ba has its ordinary dubitative force, and not an optative, as when it follows ba suffixed to the negative base. Thus mirebaya means "since he has seen, if indeed he has seen," while mibaya means "Oh! that he might see." Mireba ka would mean "is it because he has seen," or "perhaps because he has seen."

Examples of ba:—

Haru tateba, kiyuru kohori. The ice that melts now that the spring has come.

Hi wo tomoshite mireba, ro-
ku-jiu bakari no hōshi nari. When he kindled a light and looked, it was a priest of about sixty years of age.

Sareba or shikareba (for sa areba or shika areba). Since that is so, or that being so.

Kono hi kureshikaba (shika, When this sun had set.
perfect of past participle shi).

Do is the same particle to (with the nigori) already described under the head of particles suffixed to the conclusive form. With the perfect it may be translated "though," "although," "notwithstanding." To ihedo, literally "though it be said that," "though one say that," is often found where the meaning is simply "although."

Observe that the phrase yuku to mo, "though he should go," forms a Future Concessive corresponding to the Future conditional yukaba, "if he should go," while yukedo is the Perfect Concessive corresponding to the Perfect Conditional yukeba.

Do is very commonly followed by mo, "even," as yukedomo, "even though he went."
Examples of do and domo:—

Yobedomo, samezu.  Even though they called her, she did not awake.

Tenki ha yoroshiku safurahedomo, sashitsukahe kore ari, mai'i-gataku safurafu. Although the weather is good, I am unable to come, having an engagement.

Konnichi no on ide wo machi safurahedomo. Although I expected you to come to-day.

Kanji wo mochiyuru ha hanahada futsugō naredomo. Although the use of Chinese characters is very improper.

Ya, the interrogative particle, is sometimes found after me, the perfect form of the future particle mu, as in arame ya, "will there be," or "will there have been."

Ba and do may be added to the perfect forms of either verbs or adjectives.
CHAPTER VII.

INFLECTED TENIWOHA.

Inflected teniwoha are suffixed to verbs and adjectives only. In the following list the same classification has been adopted as in the case of the uninflected teniwoha, i.e., according to the part of the verb to which they are suffixed. Only a few of these suffixes are added directly to adjectives. As in the case of uninflected teniwoha, the verb *aru* usually intervenes.

I. INFLECTED TENIWOHA ADDED TO ADVERBIAL FORM.

*Tsuru* (*te, tsu, tsuru, te, tsure*) has the same meaning as the Chinese 竟 and the Japanese *hatsuru*, i.e., "to finish"; thus *mitsuru, kikitsuru*, mean "to finish seeing," "to finish hearing." *Tsuru* is much the same as the *te* shimafu of the spoken language. It is not really a sign of the past tense, or it would hardly be found combined with the past suffix *shi*, but it is often difficult to render it otherwise in English.

*Te* followed by the combination of particles *shi ga* or *shi ga na* forms an optative. Ex.: *Ikade kono Kaguyahime wo eteshigana, miteshigana.* "Oh! that I might obtain this Kaguyahime! Oh! that I might see her!"

*Te*, with *n*, the future particle, and *ya*, the interrogative, expresses a request; as in the following examples:—

*Yo fukete, osoroshikereba, okurite tamahi ten ya.*  
As the night has become late, and I am afraid, will you please escort me.

*Chiunagon no ko wo esaseten ya?*  
Will you be after causing me to obtain the Chiunagon's daughter?
In the later form of the language, the root te is the only form in use. Here it has lost the meaning te shimafu which it had in the old language, and merely indicates that the action of the verb to which it is joined is regarded as prior or preparatory to that of the principal verb of the sentence; in other words, it forms a past participle.

Examples of tsuru:—

_Uguisu no nakitsuru hana._ The flowers where the uguisu has just been singing.
_Sake kurahitsureba, inan to ifu._ When they had finished drinking the wine, they said they would go away.
_Hana sakite zo hito ni niku ru._ It is after the flowers have opened, that people come to see them.
_Okina no mafusan koto kikita mahi ten ya._ You will kindly hear to the end what the old man is about to say to you.
_Ikusa mite, ya wo hagu._ To whet one's arrows after one sees the battle.
_Kakushite yo._ Be after hiding it.
_Haru sugite, natsu kitaru._ Spring having passed, summer comes.

_Taru (tari, tari, taru, tara, tare) is te, the adverbial form of tsuru, followed by the verb aru, “to be.” It has the same meaning as the te aru or te iru of the spoken language, and should be distinguished from the colloquial _ta_, which (though the same word as _taru_) is used simply as a past tense. The force of _taru_ will be understood from the following examples: _Nururu_, for instance, means “to get wet”; _nuretaru_, “to be having got wet,” _i.e._, “to be wet”; _nuru_ means “to lie down”; _netaru_, “to be having lain down.” The _nureta_ and _neta_ of the spoken language mean “got wet,” “lay down.”
Examples:

- Hige kami kotogotoku shiroku nari-tari.
- Kimono no shimeri-taru wo nugite.
- Kami-kazu wo habuki-taru ha hone-ori wo hoshimu ni arazu.

His beard and hair have all become white.
Having taken off his wet clothes.
The having diminished the number of leaves was not because labour was grudged.

*Nuru* (ni, nu, nuru, na, nure) is the verb inuru, “to go away,” the initial i having been lost after the i or e final of the adverbal form of the preceding verb. *Nuru* and *tsuru* differ little in meaning, but they are not found combined with the same verbs, *nuru* being usually found with intransitive, *tsuru* with transitive verbs. This rule is, however, subject to numerous exceptions. *Nuru* may often be conveniently rendered by the adverb “away,” as yuki-nuru, “to go away,” shinobi-nuru, “to steal away,” yake-nuru, “to burn away.” The German *hin* is a still closer equivalent.

*Nan* after the adverial form of verbs is the future of this suffix.

Motowori is of opinion that *ni* in such phrases as nari ni keri, kihe ni seba, etc., is *ni* the adverbal form of *nuru* and not *ni* the preposition.

Like *te*, *ni* with *shi ga* or *shi ga na* has the force of an optative.

Examples of *nuru*:

- Nonoshiru uchi ni yo fukenu. Whilst we were gossiping, the night grew late.
- Kokoni usenishikaba. Inasmuch as she died here.
- Fune ni norinan to su. We made to go away on board.

*Keru* (keri, keri, keru, kera, kere) is the perfect of *kurü*, “to come,” as in the example tsukahi no kereba, tanoshimi to
(omohite) matsu, "I waited, thinking of the joy when the messenger should have come." As a suffix, however, it is employed in a looser and more general signification, and is sometimes little more than a substitute for the perfect ending of the principal verb. Where its original force is more distinct it may be rendered "at length," "it came to pass that."

The form geru is sometimes met with in old writers.

The spoken equivalent of keru is te kita.

Examples of keru:—

Hana ha saki keri. The flowers have at length opened.

Haru ha ki ni keri. Spring has at length arrived.

Nige-use ni keri. They at length ran away.

The ni keri of the last two examples is often written ngeri in the naka mukashi period.

Shi (—ki, shi, ke, shika) is the sign of the past tense. The root of the verb with shi added is like the Greek aorist, simply a past tense, and nothing more. This is really the only past tense in the Japanese language, at least in its classical form. Past time may, however, be implied by the use of other suffixes, and when tsuru, nuru, taru or keru is added to a verb, a past tense will usually, though not invariably, be the proper translation.

The following example illustrates the distinction between tsuru, nuru, and shi. Fuji nami ha saki te chiri ni ki, "the westeria waves (poetical for flowers) having first (te) blossomed, became (ki) dispersed away (ni)."

Ignorant writers of the present day often use shi for the conclusive as well as for the attributive form.

The semi-Chinese style prefers to indicate past time by separate words such as katsute "previously," sudeni "already," &c.
Examples of *shi*:

*Kiō ni te umarashi womina.* A woman born in Kiō.

*Kokoni usenishikaba.* Inasmuch as she died here.

*Muma wa kishi (or koshi) michi wasurenu mono nari.*

The horse is an animal which does not forget the road which it has come.

*Korosan to shiki.*

They made to kill us.

*Taki* is inflected regularly as an adjective of the first conjugation.

It is the same word with the adverb *ito* (before adjectives) or *itaku* (before verbs) "very," "exceedingly," and in the old language when added to verbs it produced adjectives resembling English adjectives in *ly, ful*, etc., as *medetaki, "lovely, from medzuru, "to love"; kohi-taki, "much longed for," from kofu, "to love," "to long for." In the modern language *taki* forms desiderative adjectives, and may be added to all verbs, as *yukitaki, "desirous to go," uritaki, "desirous to sell." It has replaced the *ahoshiki* of the old language.

Examples of *taki*:

*Go mengo nasaretaki mune.* The information that you desire an interview.

*Go shōchi kore aritaku sonji-saburafu.* I think it desirable that you should understand.

II. INFLECTED TENIWOHA ADDED TO CONCLUSIVE FORM.*

*Naru* (*nari, nari, naru, nara, nare*), "to be," is sometimes found annexed to the conclusive form of the verb, as in the

*It has been thought convenient to follow the practice of the Japanese grammarians and to place the suffixes *naru, meru, ran, beki, and majiki* under the head of Teniwoha suffixed to the Conclusive Form. At the same time there can be no doubt that these particles are really suffixed to the attributive form, and that what in verbs of the second conjugation appears to be the conclusive form is only the attributive form denuded of the final syllable *ru*, which has disappeared owing to phonetic causes.
phrase Yama ni mushi no kohe su nari, "There is a chirping of insects on the hill."

Meru (meri, meri, meru, mera, mere) expresses a slight shade of uncertainty, such as is indicated in English by the use of such adverbs as "seemingly," "probably," "apparently."

The Kotoba no Chikamichi says that meru is contracted for mihe aru, mihe being the root of mijuru, "to seem."

Aru, whether alone or in composition, loses the final ru before meru.

Examples of meru:—

Shiritameredo. Although they are doubtless aware.

Oroka naranu hito bito ni They are doubtless anything koso amere (for aru mere). but stupid men.

Ran (ran, ran, ran, —, rame) is aran, the future of aru, "to be," the initial a being dropped after the final vowel of the verb, in order to avoid a hiatus. Ran is therefore the same

No question arises on this point in the other conjugations where these two forms are identical.

This will explain a number of apparent irregularities in the forms assumed by the verb before these particles. For instance, we see that seza nari, where nari is apparently attached to the negative base, is really sezaru nari, and in confirmation of this we have the intermediate form sezan nari, in which the n of sezan represents the r of ru which has become assimilated to the following consonant. In the same way miran, where ran seems added to the adverbial form, is a contraction for miru ran, ameru for aru meru, su nari for suru nari.

The modern written language sometimes follows the Yedo colloquial idiom in having the attributive form of verbs of the second conjugation in eru or iru instead of in uru, and we therefore meet with such forms as sutebeki, dekimajiki, where beki and majiki are not really added to the adverbial form, as might appear at first sight, but to the colloquial attributive in eru or iru, the final ru having been lost.

For a similar reason mai (for majiki), the sign of the negative future in the spoken language, is only apparently suffixed to the adverbial form in the second conjugation.
as *de aró* of the spoken language, or *ni te aran* of the written language. *Ran* expresses a slight shade of doubt.

Examples of *ran*:

- **Hôrai to ifuran yama.** The mountain called, *if I mistake not*, Hôrai.
- **Hagi ga kana chiruran.** The hagi flowers will doubtless become scattered.

*Beki* (*beku, beshi, beki, beku, bekere*) is a regularly inflected adjective of the first conjugation. It is used in many different shades of meaning, such as to express probability, possibility, moral obligation, necessity, futurity, &c., and may be variously rendered according to circumstances by "probably," "may," "ought," "must," "should," "will," &c. The last meaning is very common in the later official and epistolary style, where *beki* has almost superseded the ordinary future in *n*. *Beshi* and *bekarazu* (*beku-arazu*) are often used as nearly equivalent to the ordinary imperative.

In the Monogatari *beii* is frequently found for *beku*.

Examples of *beki*:

- **'ôshiu e ranniu subeshi to geji shi-tamafu.** He ordered him (saying) "Make an incursion into 'ôshiu."
- **Idzure yowakaran tokoro muku kafiu beshi.** He was to confront whatever place might be weak.
- **Teki ha sadamete taigun naru beshi.** Decidedly the enemy are sure to be in great force.
- **Tatakafu beki ka; waboku kofu beki ka?** Should we fight or beg for peace?
- **Kono uta no kaku no gotoku naru beshi.** The same is probably the case with this poetry also.
- **Sono birei naru koto isubеii mo arazu.** It was impossible to describe its beauty.

*Bemi* and *bera* are poetical forms. They are abstract nouns
obtained by adding to the root be the terminations mi and ra. [See above pp. 42, 43.]

Example:—

Chi-tose-dochi to zo omofubera naru.

There is a thinkability that they are thousand-year comrades, i.e., one may well suppose that they have been comrades for a thousand years.

Majiki (majiku, maji, majiki, majiku, majikere) is a regularly inflected adjective of the second conjugation. Its meaning is the opposite of that of beki. Mai, the negative future of the spoken language, is a contracted form of majiki.

Examples of majiki:—

Kono yo ni ha mata mirumaji. In this world, at any rate, we are unlikely to see him again.

Tsukafu beki tokoro to tsukafu majiki tokoro to ari. There are places where it ought to be used, and also places where it ought not.

III. INFLECTED TENIWOHA ADDED TO ATTRIBUTIVE FORM.

There are no inflected teniwoha added to the attributive form of the verb or adjective.

IV. INFLECTED TENIWOHA ADDED TO NEGATIVE BASE.

Nu (zu or ni, zu, nu, zu, ne), “not,” is the negative suffix. Nu is obsolete in all but the oldest form of Japanese.

Examples of nu:—

Ihanedo. Though one do not say.
Shirazu. I don’t know.
Shirazu omohiki. He felt ignorant.
Yob sezu-ha. If one did not take care.
INFLECTED TENIWOHA.

Zaru (zari, zari, zaru, zara, sare) is for zu-aru. In the later language zaru is preferred to the simple suffix nu, especially in the case of the attributive form.

Zaru, for zo aru, must be distinguished from the above.

Examples of zaru:—

Shirasari keri. He did not learn (or know).
Shirasaru hito. A stranger, or, a man who does not know.

N or mu (n or mu, n or mu, n or mu, —, me) is the future suffix. It may also give the verb the force of a subjunctive or of an optative mood. At other times such adverbs as “probably,” “doubtless,” &c., are the most convenient way of rendering it.

Examples of n:—

Hottogisu ki-nakan tsuki ni. In the month when the hoto-
ogisu will come and sing.
Imada minu hito ni mo tsugen. I would tell those also who have not yet seen it.
Kwaki nobin to suru ni. The fiery element, in its efforts to expand.
Ikahodo kammuri uruhashi-
karan ni no. However elegant the head-
nikahito.
dress may be.
Nikki kakan hito. Those persons who may write journals.
Korosan to shiki. They made to kill us.
Horai to ifu yama naran. It is probably the mountain called Hórai.

Nzuru. The future suffix n is sometimes combined with the verb suru, “to do,” thus forming a compound future tense. This combination has the meaning of a future tense proper, and not of a subjunctive or optative mood.
Examples of *nzuru*:

**Kihe usenanzu.** I will vanish away.

**Saru tokoro he mairanzuru koto.** The being about to go to such a place.

**Ware ha kore yori kaheri inanzu.** I will return from this place.

This combination is not found either in the oldest or in the most modern form of the Japanese language.

The word *makarazu* occurs in the *Tosa Nikki* not as a negative, but as a future. *Makarazu* is here put for *makaran- zu*, “I will come.” This form is preserved in several of the local dialects.

*Mashi* (—, *mashi, mashi, mase, mashika*). *Mashi* is a kindred particle to *n* and *beki*, but like the English phrases “would have,” “ought to have,” is only used where the action of the verb might have taken place, but did not. It is most commonly found after conditional clauses, where it implies that the condition is unfulfilled.

*Mashi* is chiefly confined to poetry.

Examples of *mashi*:

**Chikakaraba**

**Kaheri ni dani mo**

**Uchi-yukite**

**Imoga tamakura**

**Sashi-kahete**

**Netemo komashi wo.**

**Ahi mizu ba**

**Kohishiki koto mo**

**Nakaramashi.**

If thou wert near,

Even it were only to return,

I would go to thee,

And having slept,

Exchanging with thee arm pillows,

I would come.

If we had never met,

Neither would there have been love.
Miru hito mo
   Naki yama-zato no
Sakura-bana
   Hoka no chiruran
   Nochi zo sakamashi.

Uguhisu no tani yori idzuru
   kohe naku ba, haru kuru
   koto ha tare ka shiranashi?

The cherry-flowers of the
   mountain hamlets, where
there are none to see them,
    ought to flower after the
others shall have become
   scattered.

Were it not for the note of
   the uguisu from the valley,
who would know of the
   arrival of spring?

V. INFLECTED TENIWOHA ADDED TO PERFECT.

Ru (ri, ri, ru, ra, re).  The meaning and derivation of the
   perfect form in ru have been already explained at page 88.
This form is peculiar to verbs of the first conjugation and the
   irregular verb suru, the perfect of which is seru.

Examples of perfect form in ru:—

Kono koto ha onore Mikuni no
   Kotodama ni tsubara ni
   iheri.
Nochi no yo no hito no kakeru
   mono miru ni.

This subject I have myself
   fully discussed in the Mikuni no Kotodama.

In reading the writings of
   men of a later age.

TABLE OF TENIWOHA SUFFIXED TO
   INFLECTED WORDS.

I. TENIWOHA ANNEXED TO ROOT.

I. UNINFLECTED.

Ni, ha, mo, to, nagara, tsutsu, gatera, gachi, ——mi ——mi,
   ——tsu ——tsu, na ——so, yo.
## INFLECTED TENIWOHA.

### 2. INFLECTED.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>te</td>
<td>tsu</td>
<td>tsuru</td>
<td>te</td>
<td>tsure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tari</td>
<td>tari</td>
<td>taru</td>
<td>tara</td>
<td>tare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ni</td>
<td>nu</td>
<td>nuru</td>
<td>na</td>
<td>nure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keri</td>
<td>keri</td>
<td>keru</td>
<td>kera</td>
<td>kere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—</td>
<td>ki</td>
<td>shi</td>
<td>ke</td>
<td>shika</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taku</td>
<td>tashi</td>
<td>taki</td>
<td>taku</td>
<td>takere</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## II. TENIWOHA ANNEXED TO CONCLUSIVE FORM.

### 1. UNINFLECTED. *Rashi, to, ya, kashi, mo, yo, na.*

### 2. INFLECTED.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nari</td>
<td>nari</td>
<td>naru</td>
<td>nara</td>
<td>nare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meri</td>
<td>meri</td>
<td>meru</td>
<td>mera</td>
<td>mere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ran</td>
<td>ran</td>
<td>ran</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>rame</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beku</td>
<td>beshi</td>
<td>beki</td>
<td>beku</td>
<td>bekere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>majiku</td>
<td>maji</td>
<td>majiki</td>
<td>majiku</td>
<td>majikere</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
III. TENIWOHA ADDED TO ATTRIBUTIVE FORM.

1. UNINFLECTED.  \textit{Na, ka, kana, kara, wo, aku.}

2. INFLECTED. None.

IV. TENIWOHA ANNEXED TO NEGATIVE BASE.

1. UNINFLECTED.  \textit{Ba, de, ji, nan.}

2. INFLECTED.

\begin{tabular}{l|c|c|c|c}
Adv. Form. & Conclusive Form. & Attributive Form. & Negative Base. & Perfect. \\
\hline
zu or \textit{ni} & \textit{zu} & \textit{nu} & \textit{zu} & \textit{ne} \\
\textit{zari} & \textit{zari} & \textit{zaru} & \textit{zara} & \textit{zare} \\
\textit{n or mu} & \textit{n or mu} & \textit{n or mu} & \textit{—} & \textit{me} \\
\textit{—} & \textit{mashi} & \textit{mashi} & \textit{mase} & \textit{mashika} \\
\end{tabular}

V. TENIWOHA ANNEXED TO PERFECT.

1. UNINFLECTED.  \textit{Ba, do, ya.}

2. INFLECTED.

\begin{tabular}{l|c|c|c|c}
Adv. Form. & Conclusive Form. & Attributive Form. & Negative Base. & Perfect. \\
\hline
\textit{ri} & \textit{ri} & \textit{ru} & \textit{ra} & \textit{re} \\
\end{tabular}
CHAPTER VIII.
HUMBLE AND HONORIFIC VERBS, AUXILIARY VERBS, VERBS USED AS ADVERBS AND CONJUNCTIONS.

The absence in the Japanese verb of any grammatical distinction of person has been already remarked. This want is partly supplied by the extensive use of humble and honorific words and particles, the former being chiefly characteristic of the first person, and the latter of the second. A curious exception is the case of the Mikado, who in books is made to use the honorifics in speaking of himself.

Humility and respect are indicated in Japanese in the following ways:—
I. By prefixing to nouns on, go, ki, son, he, &c.; or to verbs the particles o or on.

II. By substituting for the simple verbs the derivative causative or passive verbs.

III. By the use of humble and honorific synonyms instead of the ordinary nouns or verbs.

IV. By means of auxiliary verbs.

The humble and honorific prefixes, and the use of causative and passive verbs as honorifics, have been noticed above. [See pp. 46, 99, 100.] The following are examples of humble and honorific synonyms:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOUNS</th>
<th>HUMBLE</th>
<th>HONORIFIC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ko (child)</td>
<td>segare</td>
<td>go shisoku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Musume (daughter)</td>
<td>shôjo</td>
<td>shitsu jo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tegami (letter)</td>
<td>suncho</td>
<td>hôkan</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
HUMBLE AND HONORIFIC VERBS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERBS.</th>
<th>HUMBLE.</th>
<th>HONORIFIC.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Miru (to see)</td>
<td>Haiken suru</td>
<td>Goranjiru or Goran nasaru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suru (to do)</td>
<td>Tsukamatsuru</td>
<td>Nasaruru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yuku (to go)</td>
<td>Makaru</td>
<td>Idemasu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kuru (to come)</td>
<td>Mairu</td>
<td>Idemasu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ifu (to say)</td>
<td>Mafusu</td>
<td>Ohosuru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atayuru (to give)</td>
<td>Aguru</td>
<td>Kudasaru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taburu (to eat)</td>
<td>———</td>
<td>Kikoshimesu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Okuru (to send)</td>
<td>Mairasuru</td>
<td>———</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

As will be seen from the examples quoted below, the verbs used as humble and honorific substitutes for ordinary verbs have a tendency to lose their original specific meaning, and are in many cases used as mere indications of humility or respect. In some instances a still further change takes place, the distinction between respect and humility is lost, and the auxiliary ceases to be anything more than a characteristic of a polite style. A familiar example of this is the termination masu of the spoken language.

I. Auxiliary verbs used primarily with verbs in the first person to express humility.

_Haberu_ or _hamberu_ originally meant "to be beside," "to be in attendance on," but it has acquired the same force as the modern colloquial masu or gozarimasu. The old language uses _haberu_ chiefly with verbs in the first or third person as a more respectful word than _aru_, "to be," or _woru_, "to abide." It is obsolete in the modern language.

Examples of _haberu_:

_Ikade ka yo ni haberan?_  
How shall I remain in this world?

_Yo ha omohi no hoka naru mono to omohi haberu._  
It is my humble opinion that this world is a thing which is beyond our expectations.
Me mo mihe haberanu ni. My eyes, too, being unable to see.

Sa ha haberanu ka? Is it not so?

Samurafu, saburafu, or safurafu is a verb of the first conjugation. Like haberu, it originally meant "to be in attendance upon," and in this sense it often occurs in the older literature. The word samurahi, "a Daimio's retainer," "a man of the two-sworded class," means, therefore, properly "an attendant." Safurafu (pronounced sôrô) has by degrees become the written equivalent of the colloquial masu or gozarimasu, and is now used as a polite auxiliary with all three persons, and even where the subject of the verb is not a living being at all. In the modern epistolary style, almost every verb has safurafu (sôrô) annexed to it.

Examples of safurafu:—

Kusushi Atsushige go Hôô no onnahe ni samurahite. The physician Atsushige being in waiting before the retired Emperor.

Sadamegataku zonji safurafu. I think it is impossible to decide.

Shokan wo mochite mafushi-ire-safurafu. I address you by a letter.

Deki shidai sashi-shinzu-beku safurafu. I will send it to you as soon as it is finished.

—-to yomeru koka mo safuraheba. As there is an old stanza composed saying that—

Onmi ha ika naru hito ni te safurafu? What manner of man are you?

Makaru means properly "to go down," "to retire from the presence of a superior," or "to go from an honourable place to one which is less honourable." Later it became used more generally as a humble word instead of yuku, "to go." In the Japanese of the present day makaru does not stand by itself,
HUMBLE AND HONORIFIC VERBS.

but is prefixed in the adverbial form to verbs signifying motion, such as *yuku, idzuru, kosu*, &c., as a mere auxiliary to express humility. It is also found before *aru, “to be,” and *wori, “to abide.”

*Makaru* occurs very frequently in the notes of evidence taken in courts of justice.

Examples of *makaru*:

*Tama no eda tori ni nan makaru to ihasete (Tsu-kushi he) kudari tamafu.*

Saying that he was going down to fetch the jewel branch, he went down (to Tsukushi).

Going from the capital to the provinces is always spoken of in Japan as “going down.” This example is from one of the old classics. The following examples show the modern use of *makaru*:

*Kifu he makari koshi sa-furafu setsu.*

When he visited your honour-able city.

*Kokoni makari ari safurafu tokoro.*

Whilst I was here.

*Mafusu* (pron. *môsu*) was originally used, chiefly in the first person, as a very humble word for *ifu, “to say.” In the later language it is still a polite word for *ifu* when it stands alone or precedes another verb, but it is also employed after verbs in the adverbial form as a mere auxiliary to indicate humility, and without any trace of its original meaning.

Examples of *mafusu*:

*Genji no kimi ni mafusube- ki koto.*

Something which ought to be respectfully represented to Prince Genji.

*Kono yoshi mafushi tamahe.*

Be so good as to represent this (to some high personage).
MODERN LANGUAGE.

_Hiki-bune idete minato he_  |  Tug-boats having come out,
_hiki-ire-mafushi-safurafu._  |  towed us into the harbour.
_Yakushô to oboshiku mihe-  |  It looked like a public office.
_mafushi safurafu._  |  
_Yu wo tsukahi-mafusu koto._  |  The use of hot baths.

_Kikoyuru, like mafusu, is properly a humble word for “to say,” “to tell,” but it is often used as a mere auxiliary expressing humility without any specific meaning. The compounds kohi-kikoyuru, omohi-kikoyuru for instance, are only polite expressions instead of the simple verbs kofu, “to love,” omofu, “to think.” This word is obsolete in the modern language._

_Tatematsuru_ originally meant “to give as a present,” as in the sentence _Masatsura sake yoki mono tatematsureri, “Masatsura brought a present of sake of excellent quality.”_ As an auxiliary it is a very humble word, and is much used in memorials, addresses, and other writings composed in a formal style.

_Examples of tatematsuru:_

_Ippitsu keijô tatematsuri safurafu._  |  I beg to address you one stroke of the pen.
_Negahi age tatematsuri safurafu._  |  I most humbly request you.

_Aguru, “to raise,” “to offer up,” is also joined to the roots of verbs to mark humility._

_Example:_

_Sudenî mafushi-age safurafu yôni._  |  As I have already had the honour to inform you.

_Mairasuru_ means “to send as a present.” It is used generally as a humble auxiliary both in the old language and occasionally in the modern epistolary style, especially in letters written by women._
Examples of *mairasuru*:

Go henji wo mafushi-age mairase-safurafu beshi. I shall reply to you.
On yorokobi mafushi-age mairase-safurafu. I beg to offer you my humble congratulations.

II. Auxiliary verbs used as honorifics with verbs in the second person, or with verbs in the third person when the actions of some exalted personage are spoken of.

Tamafu is a lengthened form of the old verb *tabu*, "to give," and was originally used as a honorific substitute for that verb. Even at present it has often this force, but it is more commonly a mere honorific in which the meaning "give" can no longer be traced.

Examples of *tamafu*:

Wasure-tamafuna. Please do not forget.
Sassoku ni kiki-sumi tamahiki. At once granted his request.
Tsuki zwo mite imijiku naktamafu. Seeing the moon, she wept exceedingly.
Oshihe - mairase-sase-tamahikeri. He caused him to teach.

**Masu** (1st conj.) is used as a honorific in the old language, where it is found exclusively in the second or third person. It is much more restricted in its use than *tamafu*, being only used along with certain verbs. **Masu** originally meant "to sit," "to dwell." The modern colloquial auxiliary *masu* is the same word, although its conjugation is different, and it is used indiscriminately with all three persons.

Examples of *masu*:

Hanamuke shi ni idemaseri. He came to give a parting present.
HUMBLE AND HONORIFIC VERBS.

Kakuri-mashi-ki.

He became hidden, i.e., he died.

Ko ha Watarahi ni masu kami nari.

This is the god who dwells in Watarai.

Asobasu, asobasaru, and asobasaruru, from asobu, "to sport," are used as honorifics in the same way as tamafu.

Examples:

On sorohi asobashi, gokigen yoku on toshi kasane— That you all together have begun a new year in good health—

Go konrei shiubi yoku on toto-nohi asobasare medetaku zonji tatematsuri safurafu. I beg to congratulate you on the marriage which you have celebrated so auspiciously in all respects.

In the older language, if a honorific particle is placed before a verb the honorific terminations or auxiliaries are omitted, and vice versa no honorific is prefixed if the verb has a honorific termination or auxiliary. This rule is not observed in the later language.

III. Other auxiliary verbs.

Aru, naru. Aru (や) means "to be," in the sense of "to exist." It is not the mere copula of a proposition like naru (は). Thus, although the two propositions

Kono muma ha shirokari,
Kono muma ha shiroki nari,

are practically identical, the real meaning of the former is "As to this horse, the quality of whiteness exists," while the latter is "This horse is white," nari being nothing more than a copula.

Aru is chiefly used, as in the above example, as an auxiliary joined to adjectives. Its use with verbs to form a perfect tense, and its combinations with some of the commoner teni-woha have been already noticed.

Naru, which is conjugated like aru, is contracted for ni aru.
Here the *ni* is sometimes the locative particle "in," and sometimes the root of an obsolete verb *nu*, "to be." *Naru* as an attributive is abbreviated in the spoken language into *na*, a form which is occasionally used by modern writers.

*Nari* is often used after the attributive forms of verbs and adjectives to form a substitute for the conclusive form. It should be distinguished from *naru*, "to become," which follows the adverbial form of adjectives, and which is conjugated as a regular verb of the first conjugation.

Examples of *aru* and *naru*:

*Chi aru mo, oroka naru mo.* Both those who have understanding and those who are foolish.

*Kore ha Hôrai no yama nari.* This is the mountain Hôrai.

*Kaku nari to shirubeku nan.* You must know that this is so.

*Midzukara giwo tokashimuru nari.* It makes the meaning explained of itself.

*Naze nareba——nani nani to nareba nari.* Why is it so?——it is because it is so and so.

*Suru*, "to do." The simple verb may be replaced by the adverbial form followed by *suru*. Sometimes, however, there is a difference of meaning. Thus *yorokobi-te* means "rejoicing"; *yorokobi shite*, "making gala."

*Uru*, "to get," "to be able," is prefixed in the adverbial form to negative verbs, as in the examples——

*E ihazu.* He is unable to say.

*E nomazu.* He is unable to drink.

*E omahi hanareji.* He will be unable to cease to think of her.

A noun may intervene, as in the example:——

*E taimen tamawaranu.* I cannot accept an interview

*Kanuru*, "to be unable," is annexed to verbs in the adverbial form.
Example:—

Yuki-kane safurafu. I am unable to go.

Afu, “to meet.” In many cases, this verb when prefixed in the adverbial form to other verbs has more or less of its original meaning, as ahi-noru, “to ride together”; ahi-miru, “to see one another”; ahi-boruru, “to love one another”; but in the later language it is often used without much meaning, as natsu ni ahi-nari safurafu toki, “When it became summer.”

VERBS AS ADVERBS OR CONJUNCTIONS.

Many words which must be translated in English by adverbs or conjunctions are, in Japanese, verbs or adjectives (kotoba). Indeed, as shown in Chap. IV., every verb and adjective has a form in which it is an adverb.

Examples of verbs as adverbs:—

Hatashi-te. “Ultimately,” “eventually.”
Seme-te. “At least.”
Kaheri-te. “On the contrary.”
Mashi-te. “Much more so.”
Amari “Too much.”
Kahesu-gahesu. “Again and again.”
Nokora-zu. “Without exception.”

Examples of verbs as conjunctions:—

Sō-shite (lit. “having done so”) “and.”
Shikareba (lit. “since it is so”) “therefore.”
Oyobi (adv. form of oyobu, “to reach to”) “and.”
Narabi ni (lit. “in a line with”) “and.”
Tadashi (adv. form of tadasu, “to correct”) “but.”
Aruhiha (properly aru ha) “in some cases,” “or.”
CHAPTER IX.
SYNTAX.

ORDER OF WORDS IN A SENTENCE.

1. Qualifying words or phrases precede the words which they qualify. Thus:—

(a) The adjective (verb or adjective in attributive form) precedes the noun which it qualifies, as yoki hito, "a good man"; kuru hito, "the man who comes."

(b) The adverb precedes the word which it qualifies, as ito hayaku, "very fast"; hayaku kuru, "to come quickly."

(c) The noun followed by the genitive participle no or ga precedes the noun to which it is joined, as hito no chikara, "a man's strength."

2. The nominative case stands at the beginning of a sentence. Tsuki ha kagiri naku medetaki mono nari. "The moon is an immeasurably beautiful object." To this rule there are numerous exceptions. In comparisons, the object with which the subject of the sentence is compared usually, though not always, precedes it, as in the sentence Kono yama yori are ha takashi, "That mountain is higher than this."

3. The verb (verb or adjective in conclusive form) is placed at the end of the sentence, as in the last example.

The regular order of a sentence is frequently inverted in poetry, the verb appearing in the middle, and the sentence being closed by a noun, a particle, or a verb or adjective in the adverbial or attributive form.
Examples:

1. Na de fu (for nani to ifu and pronounced najô) kokochi sureba, kaku mono omohi taru sama ni te tsuki wo mi tamafu zo — uma-shiki yo ni?

2. Kokoro aran
   Hito ni misebaya

3. Tsunoöka ga
   Shiwoyaki keburi.

4. The later semi-Chinese prose style affords examples of a similar construction.

5. Negahaku ha shihô no kunshi kôkiu aran koto wo.

6. Osoraku ha fugaku no soshiri aran koto wo.

7. Osoraku ha yo no hito no warahi-gusa to naran koto wo.

Because of what feelings do you in this pleasant world gaze upon the moon with the appearance of being so immersed in thought?

I would that I could show to some one who had a heart the smoke from the salt-furnaces of Tsunoöka.

I pray that gentlemen from all quarters will purchase it.

I fear I may incur the reproach of ignorance.

I fear it may become a laughing-stock to the public.

4. The case signs are placed after the nouns to which they relate, as koko made, "to this place"; ware no, "mine."

5. The direct object of the verb precedes it, as kaha wataru, "to cross a river." In poetry the object is sometimes placed after the verb.

6. A noun governed by a preposition precedes the direct object of the verb, as fune ni kaha wataru, "to cross a river in a boat."

7. Expressions denoting time precede expressions denoting place, and a general expression precedes one that is more precise. Examples: Itsu made kokoni sumu ka? "Until when do you reside here?" Roku gwatsu nanuka made. "Until the seventh day of the sixth month."
8. Conjunctions and interrogative particles are placed after the word or clause to which they belong, as in the examples, Ika naru hito ka to tofu, “He inquires what manner of man he is”; Ikaga subeki to omofu, “What is to be done? thought he.”

9. Dependent clauses precede principal clauses.

Example:—

Uguhisu no
Tani yori idzuru
Kohe naku ba,
Haru kuru koto ha
Tare ka shiramashi?
In poetry this rule is often disregarded.

Example:—

Yo wo sutsuru
Kokoro ha nawo zo
Nakari-keru—
Uki wo ushi to ha
Omohi shiredomo.

Aki hagi wo
Irodoru kaze ha
Fukinu tomo
Kokoro ha kareji
Kusaba naraneba.

Inversions like the following are not unfrequent in the modern semi-Chinese style:—

Hisokani kiku—shimbun jôrei
issô gem-mitsu wo kuhafuru
no gi arî to.

Kore wo kiku—kôgi ha ses-sei
ni shikazu to.

Were it not for the note of the uguisu from the valley, who would know of the arrival of spring?

To abandon this world
Heart as yet
There is not—
That misery is miserable
Though I recognize.

What though the wind blow that paints the autumn hagi—my heart will not wither, for it is not a herb-leaf.

We have privately heard that it is under consideration to add a degree of stringency to the Press Laws.

We are told that a clever falsehood is inferior to a clumsy truth.
SYNTAX.

In the style imitated from the Chinese, as for instance in official letters, a number of words of frequent occurrence are usually written in the Chinese order, although in reading, the Japanese construction is followed. Thus the verbs *motsu* 以, *itasu* 致, *seshimuru* 令, *uru* 得, *yoru* 依 (or 因) in the phrase *ni yorite*, *oku* 於 in the phrase *ni oite*, *oyobu* 及 are written before the nouns which they govern, the passive termination *aruru* 被 is written before the verb to which it belongs, *ari* 有 is put before *kore* when *kore* is nominative to it, the negative particle *zu* 不 comes before its verb, and the adjectives *kataki* 難, *gotoki* 如, and *beki* 可 precede the verbs with which they are compounded. Examples will be found in specimens VII., VIII., and IX. at the end of the volume.

PARTICLES AFFECTING THE FORM OF THE VERB OR ADJECTIVE AT THE END OF A SENTENCE (*kakari teniwoha*)

It has been already pointed out (p. 88) that the principal verb of a sentence, *i.e.*, the verb in the indicative mood, or the adjective when it includes the verb "is," is placed at the end of the sentence, and in the conclusive form. To this rule classical* Japanese recognizes certain well defined exceptions, which are stated below. It is difficult to over-estimate the importance of this part of Japanese grammar. Motowori has devoted a work in seven volumes, the *Tama no O,*† to the elucidation and illustration of this rule and its exceptions,

* The modern language shows a strong tendency to disregard these exceptions and to revert to the simplicity of the general rule. In the present spoken language both rule and exceptions are altogether unknown, and in the modern written language there is so much confusion between the old practice and the new forms to which the language seems tending, that no rule can be laid down. The semi-Chinese style rarely employs constructions where the exceptions required by classical Japanese would be exemplified.

† *Tama no O*, lit. "the string of jewels" (*i.e.*, the connecting principle of words), a high-flown expression for "syntax."
and other grammarians have followed his example. The substance of Motowori's treatise is contained in the following rules, among which I. and II. are much the most important:

**Rule I.** When one of the particles zo, nan (not the particle nan suffixed to verbs), or an interrogative (ka, ya, nani, nado, nazo, tare, ikani, ikaga, ikade, idzure, itsu, iku) occurs in a sentence, the verb or adjective which closes it is put in the attributive instead of in the conclusive form.

Examples:—

*Kore ya waga motomuru yama naru.*

This is (if I mistake not) the mountain of which we are in search.

*Kore zo tama narubeki.*

It is this which must be the jewel.

*Yama kakusu*

*Haru no kasumi zo*

This mist of spring which hides the mountains is hateful.

*Urameshiki.*

*Kami yo yori*

*Iku yo ka henishi?*

How many ages have passed since the age of the gods?

*Fukaku omohi*

*Sometsu to ihi shi*

When was it that the autumn wind blowing scattered those leaves of speech (i.e., words) in which he told me that his mind was deeply tinged with love?

*Koto no ha ha*

*Itsu ka aki-kaze*

*Fukite chirinuru?*

Her heart was more excellent than her beauty.

Most Japanese grammarians include no in the list of particles which govern the attributive form. The mere occurrence of no in a sentence, however, does not affect the final verb or adjective, unless it is actually joined to it. In such cases the verb or adjective is properly a noun, but as shown at p. 107, this construction is frequently substituted for the conclusive form.
Examples:—

*Sasagani no
Koromo ni kakari
Ware wo tanomuru.*

No is here joined not to *koromo*, but to *tanomuru*, so that there is properly no verb in the sentence, *sasagani no tanomuru* meaning properly “the spider's turning for help,” not “the spider turned for help.”

*Ware wo omofu
Hito wo omohanu
Mukuhi ni ya?—
Waga omofu hito no
Ware wo omohanu.*

Is it as a punishment for not loving him who loved me?—
He whom I love loves me not.

**Rule II.** When the particle *koso* occurs in a sentence, the verb or adjective which closes it is put in the perfect form instead of the conclusive form.

Examples:—

*Kore koso tama nare.*

*Yone koso yokere.*

*Iro yori mo
Ka koso ahare to
Omoheyure.*

*Mi no uki wo
Wasure-gusa koso
Kishi ni ofure—
Ube Sumiyoshi to
Ama mo ihi-keri.*

It is this, and this only which is the jewel.

It is rice, and nothing but rice, which is good.

I feel touched above all by the fragrance more even than by the colour.

Above all things (*koso*) the herb of forgetfulness of one's woes grows upon the bank—well have the fishermen given it the name of *Sumiyoshi* (pleasant to reside in).
Yakezu ba koso, makoto naran
to omohi te, hito no ifu koto
ni mo makeme.

In case it does not burn, and
in that case only, I will
consider it genuine, and
will comply with the man's
proposal.

A verb has often to be supplied after koso.

Examples:—
Ahin-min koto wo nomi koso
(omohoyure).
Chikara aru hito ni te koso
(are).

I think of nothing but of our
meeting.
He is indeed a powerful man.

The older poems in the Manyōshū have occasionally a
perfect without koso or with a koso after the perfect. Even
at present a pure Japanese style admits the perfect form in
the case of the future particle, notwithstanding that koso may
not have preceded it.

Examples:—
Inishihe mo shika nare koso.

Even in ancient times thus
and thus only was it.
How has he thought? i.e.,
what has been his reason?
Is it likely that there should
be such an expression as
“kosu” in speaking of
rivers?

The modern popular style has often an attributive form
after koso.

RULE III. If koso occurs in the same sentence with so,
nan, or an interrogative, the verb or adjective follows the
government of koso.

Examples:—
Ohohara ya!
Oshiho no yama mo

Oh! Óhara!
Even thy mountain of Oshio,
Kefu koso ha  
Kami yo no koto mo

On this day of all others,  
The events of the age of the gods  
Will have called to mind.

Omoi idzurame.

Rule IV. When one of the particles enumerated in Rules I. and II. occurs in a dependent clause, it does not affect either the verb of the dependent or of the principal clause.

Sugata koso
Nezame no yuka ni
Mihezu to mo.

Even though I see not thy form when I lie awake in my bed.

Koyohi bakari ya (kon) to
machi-keru sama nari.

It was the appearance of one who waited (thinking) will he (come) to-night.

Exception. When the dependent clause is a quotation it is treated as a principal clause, and the verb or adjective which closes it follows the usual government. The reason for this is that the Japanese language has no distinguishing forms to mark indirect narration, and sentences must be repeated exactly as they were originally spoken, preserving of course their original grammar as independent sentences.

Examples:—

Tomo ni koso

He whom I awaited, in order that we might see the flowers together.

Hana wo mo mime to

They would ask, “How many nights have passed?”

Matsu hito.

Iku yo ka heshi to

Tohamashi mono wo.

This exception is not invariably observed. In good authors a conclusive form is occasionally found before to even when one of the particles enumerated in Rules I. and II. precedes the verb. This construction appears somewhat abnormal, and is no doubt traceable to a notion that “to” governs the verb before it in the conclusive form.
Example:—
Kane no oto ni
Ima ya akenu to (omohite).

Nagamureba
Nawo kumo fukashi—
Mine no shirayuki.

At the sound of the bell, "Hath day now broken?" (thought I).
When I looked out, the cloud of night was still deep over
the white snow of the mountain-peaks.

Where to is not the mark of quotation, as in to mo, the verb
preceding it is unaffected by the particles in the clause with
which it terminates.

Example:—
Asasa koso
Hito ha miru to mo.

Even though men should see its shallowness.

RULE V. Ya at the end of a clause does not affect the
form of the verb or adjective which precedes, but at the end
of a dependent clause, it governs the verb or adjective of the
principal clause in the attributive form.

Examples:—
Hototogisu
Konoha gakure no
Kohe ha kikoyu ya?
Kurenai ni
Shiworeshi sode mo
Kuchi hatenu—
Arabaya hito ni
Iro mo misubeki.

Can I hear the cry of the hototogisu hidden among the leaves of the trees?
My sleeves that once hung down scarlet are now utterly decayed—if only their former colour re-
mained, there is one to whom I would show it.

RULE VI. Ka, kana, and zo, at the end of a sentence,
govern the verb or adjective which precedes in the attributive
form.*

* In these cases the verb or adjective is really a noun. Ka and kana
are equivalent to aru ka, aru kana, and the verb aru is understood after zo.
Ani ka: naki ka?  Is there (or) is there not?  
Nigori ni kaho mihenu zo.  In the muddy water my face cannot be seen.

... In poetry, sentences are often met with which do not end in a verb or adjective in the conclusive form, notwithstanding that they contain none of the particles enumerated in Rules I. and II. These cases will generally fall under one of the following heads.

(a) An inversion of the ordinary construction has taken place, as in the examples quoted above, p. 171.
(b) A verb or adjective is understood which may be supplied from the context.

Examples:—
Toki shiranu  The mountain which knows not time is the peak of Fuji.
Yama ha Fuji no ne.  

Here nari is to be supplied after ne.

Aratama no  The thing which is more excellent than the morn of the new year when it comes round again is the note of the uguisu.
Toshi tachi-kaheru
Ashita yori
Masaruru mono ha
Uguhisu no kohe.

Nari is again to be supplied at the end of this sentence.

Aki hagi ni
Nihohuru waga mo
Nurenu to mo
Kimi ga mifune no
Tsuna shi tori teba

If I might only take hold of the towing-rope of thy boat, (I care not) even though I wet my garments steeped in the odour of the autumn hagi.

In this sentence there is an inversion of the ordinary construction, and some such word as kamahazu, "I care not," has to be supplied.
Akatsuki no
Kane no kohe koso
Kikoyu nare—
Kore wo iri-ahi to
Omohamashikaba.

It is none other than the sound of the bell of day-dawn that we hear—if we could only fancy that it was that of night-fall (it would be pleasant).

(c) The whole sentence has the force of an exclamation.

Examples:—
Tohoku areba
   Wabi te mo aru wo—
Sato chikaku
   Ari to kiki tsutsu
   Minu ga subenasa!

Furu yuki no
   Mi no shiro-goromo
Uchi-ki tsutsu
   Haru ki ni keri to
   Odorokarenuru!
Idzure ka hashi to
   Toheda kotahenu!

If thou were far from me, I might wait in patience, but (wo) Oh! the helpless misery of not seeing thee while hearing that thou art near my dwelling-place!

Whilst putting on my clothes white as the falling snow, (imagine) my surprise to find that spring had come!

I inquire, Where is the bridge? But alas! no answer!

These sentences are not statements of fact; they merely picture to the mind a state of things without making any assertion respecting it.

OTHER RULES OF SYNTAX.

I. When a suffix is common to a number of nouns it is placed after the last only.

Examples:—
Oya kiodai niobó wo sutete niguru.

To run away abandoning one's parents, brother and sister and wife.
II. When an inflection is common to two or more inflected words, it is put with the last of the series only, all which precede being put in the adverbial form.

Examples:—

Ayashiku uruwashiku medetaki mono nari.  It is a wonderful, graceful, and beautiful object.
Kate wo tori, hayaku tsutsume.  Take the provisions, and make them into a parcel quickly.
Chi sake, yama ochi-iri, kaha sakashima ni nagaru.  The earth gapes, mountains collapse, and rivers flow backwards.

Here sake and ochi-iri are adverbial forms put instead of the conclusive forms saku and ochi-iru, the last verb only of the series, viz., nagaru, retaining the inflection of the conclusive form.

Dorogaha ni shōzuru ha niku akaku, abura ohoshi.  As to those which are produced in muddy streams, their flesh is red and their fat plentiful.

Kehashiku takaki tokoro.  A steep and high place.

In this phrase, both kehashiku and takaki are epithets of tokoro, but, by the rule above stated, only the last—viz., takaki—takes the appropriate inflection, i.e., that of the attributive form.

Exception. If two adjectives qualify different parts of the same noun, both are put in the attributive form, as in the example yukiki no mono takaki iyashiki wo ihazu, yobiatsumu, "He called together the passers-by without respect of highness or lowness of rank."

III. Adjectives used as interjections are placed in the root form.
Examples:—

Ana u! How miserable!
Ana kanashi! How lamentable!
Kanashi na! How lamentable!
Ajikina ya! How tiresome!

IV. There are no grammatical forms to distinguish indirect from direct narration. A speech is reported without any change further than the addition of the particle to, "that." Thus the speech ware ha shirazu, "I do not know," if repeated by another person is repeated without change, as, for instance, ware ha shirazu to mafusu, "He said he did not know."

V. An interrogative at the beginning of a sentence is accompanied by ka, not ya, at the end. This rule is often disregarded by modern writers.

VI. The nominative case is often placed absolutely, i.e., without a verb. Ex.: Okina miko ni mafusu yó, "The manner of the speech of the old man to the Prince."

VII. The genitive case sometimes dispenses with the particles no or ga, as hototogisu kohe, "The cry of the hototogisu."

VIII. The particle to, "and," is often omitted, as asa yufu, "morning and evening."

KEN-YÓ-GEN.

The ken-yó-gen is a species of pun. An example in English is found in Thackeray's novel The Newcomes where he speaks of the teapot presented to Mr. Honeyman by the devotees attending his chapel as the "devoteapot." Here the syllable "tea" stands at the same time for the last syllable of "devotee" and the first syllable of "teapot." This is a very common ornament of style, not only in poetry, but in the more adorned passages of prose compositions. The severer taste of the old classical authors rejects the ken-yó-gen. It is seldom found in the Manyòshiu.

Ex.: Ikitaki kokochi naku bakari, "Having no desire to
live, and doing nothing but weep." Here *naku* must be taken twice. The first time it is the negative adverb "not," the second it is the verb "to weep."

Namida no kawaku ma mo naki-kurasu, "She spent her time in weeping, there being no interval in which her tears might dry." In this sentence *naku*, "not," must be supplied from *naki*, the root of *naku*, "to weep."

Vo no naka zo
Somuki ni to te ha
Koshikadomo
Naho uki koto ha
Oho-hara no sato.

In the last example *ohoshi*, "many," has to be supplied from Ohohara, the name of a village.
CHAPTER X.

PROSODY.

Metre. Japanese poetry has neither rhyme, assonance, nor quantity. It is not marked by a regular succession of accented syllables, as in English, and is only distinguished from prose by metre. Broadly speaking, all Japanese metre consists in the alternation or mixture of feet, or rather lines (句) of five and seven syllables. Lines of three, four, six, and eight syllables may be found in the oldest poetry, and in modern popular verse the metre is far from regular, but these variations are not intentional, and in singing or chanting, the proper length of the lines is preserved. There is no Japanese metre into which lines of other than five and seven syllables are regularly admitted.

Each kana counts as a syllable, including ぬ final, which was originally む, and is not unfrequently written so in poetry. Chinese words are not admissible in classical poetry, but in the modern popular poetry, where Chinese words do occur, the same rule holds good. リョウコク (リヤウコク) for instance counts as five syllables, ボンナウ as four.

The end of a line must also be the end of a word.

Tanka or mijika-uta, i.e., “short poetry,” so called to distinguish it from naga-uta, or “long poetry,” is by far the commonest Japanese metre, and when the general term うた is used, it is this metre which is commonly meant. It consists of five lines of five, seven, five, seven and seven syllables, or thirty-one syllables in all. There is a pause between the third and fourth lines, the former part being called the かみのく, the latter the しみのく. This division usually coincides with a break in the sense.
Each verse of thirty-one syllables is an entire poem.

Examples of *tanka* :

**THE MOON.**

*Nubatama no*  
*Yo wataru tsuki wo*  
*Omoshiromi—*  
*Waga woru sode ni*  
*Tsuyu zo ori ni keru.*

Whilst enjoying the sight of the moon crossing the dark night — On the sleeves of me waiting, there has descended the dew.

**LOVE IN A SHOWER.**

*Wag’ imoko ga*  
*Aka-mo no suso no*  
*Hidzuchi nan*  
*Kefu no kosame ni*  
*Ware sahe nure na.*

Let me too be drenched with the fine rain of to-day, which is doubtless wetting the skirts of my love’s crimson raiment.

**LEAVING HOME.**

*Idete inaba*  
*Nushi naki yado to*  
*Narinu to mo,*  
*Nokiba no mume yo*  
*Haru wo wasuruna.*

When I am gone,  
Though my dwelling become tenantless,  
Do not thou, O plum-tree by the eaves! forget the spring.

*Renka* is where one person composes part (commonly the second part) of a *tanka*, the remainder being added by some one else.

*Kiôka*, or “mad poetry,” is a modern and vulgar kind of poetry, composed in the old classical metres, especially *tanka*. It differs from classical poetry by admitting words of Chinese derivation, and in being much less choice in its diction and subject-matter. It will be seen from the following examples that it deals largely in punning and plays upon words :—
Kaharaji to
Tagahi ni kitahe
Ahi-dzuchi no
Suhe ha fuigo no
Fu-fu to zo naru.

The pair of sledge-hammers having tempered each other to eternal constancy, become at last the bellows' puff-puff. husband and wife.

There is here a pun on *fu-fu*, which is an onomatopoetic word for the puffing sound of bellows, and may also mean "husband and wife."

**IS MY LOVE THE THUNDER-GOD.**

*Misometsuru*
Hito ha jiu ku ka
Hatata kami
Narihira sama ka
Hikaru Genji ka?

Is the man whom I love nineteen or twenty?
Or the Thunder-God?
Or is he Narihira, or Hikaru (bright) Genji?

From *hatata kami*, "the Thunder-God," there is understood *hatachi ka*, "Is he twenty?" *Narihira* and *Genji* are names of beautiful youths, as we might say Apollo or Adonis.

*Kami-nari* (end of third line and beginning of fourth) also means "thunder," and *Hikaru*, one of the names of *Genji*, is inserted, because the root of the verb *hik*, "to be bright," is the second part of the word *inabikari*, "lightning."

**ARDENT LOVE.**

Mono omoheba,
Kaha no hanabi mo
Waga mi yori
Pon to idetaru
Tama ya to zo miru.

Thinking of my love, the very fire-works over the river seem as if they were balls issuing with a bang from my own body.

*Naga-uta* or *chô-ka*, i.e., "long poetry." Next to *tanka*, the commonest classical metre is *naga-uta*. Some of the best poetry which Japan has produced is in this metre. It con-
sists of a series of couplets of lines of five and seven syllables, the end of the poem being marked by an additional line of seven syllables, thus:

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

Two additional lines of seven syllables are sometimes found instead of one.

The following specimen of *naga-uta* is from the *Manyōshi* (vol. vi. fol. 55, of Riakuge edition).

**IN PRAISE OF THE PALACE OF FUTAGI.**

```
Waga ohokini | kami no mikoto no, 
Takashirasu | Futagi no miya ha, 
Momoki nasu | yama ha kodakashi, 
Ochi-tagitsu | se no 'to mo kiyoshi: 
Uguhisu no | ki-naku harube ha, 
Ihaho ni ha | yama-shita hikaru, 
Nishiki nasu | hana saki wowori ; 
Sa woshika no | tsuma yobu aki ha, 
Amagirafu | shigure wo itami, 
Sanidzurafu | momiji chiri-tsutsu, 
Yachi tose ni | are-tsugashi-tsutsu, 
Ame no shita | shirashimesan to— 
Momo yo ni mo | kaharubekaranu 
Ohomiya-dokoro.
```

By the palace of Futagi,  
Where our great King  
And divine lord  
Holds high rule,
Gentle is the rise of the hills,
Bearing hundreds of trees,
Pleasant is the murmur of the rapids,
As downward they rush:

So long as in the spring-time,
(When the nightingale comes and sings)
On the rocks
Brocade-like flowers blossom,
Brightening the mountain-foot;

So long as in the autumn
(When the stag calls to his mate)
The red leaves fall hither and thither
Wounded by the showers—
The heaven beclouding,

For many thousand years
May his life be prolonged
To rule over all under heaven
In the great palace
Destined to remain unchanged
For hundreds of ages.

_Hanka_ or _kaheshi-uta_. The _naga-uta_ is usually followed by one or more _tanka_ of the ordinary length of thirty-one syllables. These are called _hanka_. They sometimes contain the principal idea of the poem which precedes in a short, pithy form, and are at others employed as a sort of poetical save-all to utilize any scrap of imagery which it has been inconvenient to include in the _naga-uta_ itself. The _naga-uta_ quoted above is followed by five _hanka_, the first of which will serve as a specimen:
Idzumi-gaha
   Yuku se no midzu no
Taheba koso—
   Ohomiya-dokoro
   Utsurohi-yukame!

When the flowing waters of the rapids of the river Idzumi fail—then, and not till then, may our great palace suffer change!

The *hanka* is occasionally not a *tanka*, but a *sedôka*.

*Sedôka* consists of six lines, of five, seven, seven, five, seven, and seven syllables (5, 7, 7, 5, 7, 7), *i.e.*, it is a *tanka* with an additional line of seven syllables inserted between the second and third lines. The pause in *sedôka* is after the third line. It is a characteristic of this metre that the last line usually contains a repetition of some word or phrase in the earlier lines.

Examples of *sedôka*:

**LOVE IN ABSENCE.**

*Ikenobe no*
   Wo-dzuki no moto no
   Shinu na kari so ne
*Sore zo dani*
   Kimi ga katami ni
   Mi tsutsu shinuban.
   Oh! cut not the bamboo grass at the foot of the little elm tree by the pond side. If naught else is left to me, I would bear (my loneliness) looking upon it as a memento of thee.

**PITY FOR THE LABOURER.**

*Haru hi sura*
   Ta ni tachi-tsukaru
   Kimi ha kanashi mo—
*Waka kusa no*
   Tsuma naki kimi
   Ta ni tachi-tsukaru.
   I pity thee that thou becomest weary in the rice-field even on this spring day; (I pity thee) that, having no youthful spouse, thou becomest weary in the rice-field.

*Hokku*, as its name indicates, is the first part of a verse of *tanka*. It consists of three lines of five, seven, and five syllables, or seventeen syllables in all. The modern varieties
of poetry known as *haikwai uta* and *senriu* are chiefly composed in this metre, although the number of syllables is occasionally exceeded. As in the case of *tanka*, each *hokku* is an entire poem.

Examples of *hokku*:

**FUJI CONCEALED IN A MIST.**

*Kiri no umi*

*Idzuko he Fuji ha*

*Shidzumi nuru?*

Into a sea of mist whither hath Mt. Fuji sunk?

**OLD AGE.**

*Hito ni koso*

*Toshi ha yori nure*

*Haru no kusa!*

It is only man who becomes aged, Oh thou grass of spring!

**THE SUMMER SHOWER.**

*Yufudachi ya*

*Ta wo mi-meguri no*

*Kami naraba.*

Oh! if the summer shower were only a god who should make his round of visits to the rice-fields.

The last verse is an acrostic on the word *yutaka*, "wealth" or "prosperity."

**IRREGULAR VERSE.**

The four kinds of metre described above are the only regular metres known in Japanese poetry. To the first three of these, viz., *tanka*, *naga-uta*, and *sedôka*, belongs all poetry recognized as classical. The admirers of *haikwai uta* claim for it a quasi-classical character; but it is objected, with much reason, that nothing which deserves the name of poetry can well be contained in the narrow compass of a verse of seventeen syllables.

There remains a large quantity of popular poetry which cannot be reduced to any regular metre. It is, however, distinguishable from prose by a more or less regular alternation of lines of five and seven syllables. The character of the
versification of some of the principal varieties will be seen from the following specimens.

*Saibara* is a kind of popular lyrical poetry of considerable antiquity. The following drinking-song may be given as a specimen:

7 Sake wo taubete  
5 Tabe-yeute  
7 Tanto korin zo (ya!)

Drinking sake,  
Drinking till we’re drunken,  
Then let us be right sober!

5 Maudekuru
5 Na yorobohi so
5 Maudekuru
Tanna tanna
Tariya ranna

As we come along  
Steady! no staggering!  
As we come along  
With our tanna tanna  
Tariya ranna

Tari chiri ra.

*Ya*, in the third line, is an interjection, which in this kind of poetry does not count in the metre.

*Kagura* is also of considerable antiquity. As its name indicates, it was sung at the Shinto festivals. What is now known as *kagura* is dancing only, unaccompanied with singing.

**Boat-song.**

I.

5 Shinagatori
7 Ina no minato ni (aizo!)
5 Iru fune no
7 Kaji yoku makase;
7 Fune katabukuna—
7 Fune katabukuna.

Manage well the helm of the boat in the grebe-haunted harbour of Ina.  
Let her not heel over,  
Let her not heel over.

II.

5 Wakakusa no (ya!)
7 Ino mo noritari (ya!)
(Aizo!)
7 Ware mo noritari (ya!);
7 Fune katabukuna!
7 Fune katabukuna.

My young wife  
Is on board,  
And I too am on board;  
Let her not heel over,  
Let her not heel over.
It will be seen that, if stripped of interjections and repetitions, the first of these stanzas is a verse of tanka, and the second a verse of tanka wanting the third line. A large proportion of kagura are tanka more or less disguised in this way.

Utahi. Japanese dramatic works are composed partly in prose and partly in verse. The speeches of the dramatis personae, which are declaimed by the actors on the stage, are in prose, but these are always connected by a thread of narrative (as was, to some extent, the case in the older English drama) which is in verse and is chanted by a chorus. It is this latter part which is termed utahi. The Japanese have two kinds of drama, the more ancient of which is called nó. The nó are short dramatic sketches, mostly of a religious character, and occupy a position in Japanese dramatic literature corresponding to that held by the "mysteries" in Europe. The following specimen of this kind of poetry is taken from a nó called Hakurakuten. The principal personage having announced that he has been commissioned by the Emperor of China to spy out the intelligence of the inhabitants of Japan, the chorus strikes in and thus describes his voyage:

7 Fune kogi-idente
6 Hi no moto no
5 Hi no moto no
4 Sonata no
7 Kuni wo tadzunen.
5 Tōkai no
7 Namiji haruka ni
5 Yuku fune no
5 Yuku fune no
7 Ato ni iru hi no
5 Kage nokoru
7 Kumo no hatate no

Oaring forth his ship,
He would visit the land
Of the quarter
Of the rising of the sun,
Of the rising of the sun.

As she sails,
As she sails
Far over the wave-path
Of the Eastern sea,
Behind her sets the sun,
O'er her is the void of heaven
Where the cloud-banners
Amatsu sora—
Tsuki mata idzuru
Sonata yori
Yama mihesome te
Hodo mo naku
Nippon no chi ni mo
Tsuki ni keri,
Tsuki ni keri.

The following specimen of utahi is from a modern play called ‘Ishikawa Goyemon.’ It is a description of the preparations for boiling alive the celebrated robber of that name.

Shioki no basho ha
Shichi jô gahara ;
Ni chô yo hô ni
Kaki yuhi-mahashi,
Uchi ni tatetaru
Nukimi no yari—
Kanahe ni suheshi
Oho-gama ha
Jigoku no seme wo
Kono yo kara
Mi ni atsumarishi
Gunjiu no naka
Saki wo harafute
Hayano Yatôji
Iwaki Tôma mo
Ahi-yaku ni
Ihi-tsukerarete
Zehi naku mo
Shôgi ni kakaru
Ato yori mo

Are still bright with his radiance—
And now the moon comes forth;
On the same quarter
Mountains are first descried;
Ere long
Even at the land of Japan,
He hath arrived,
He hath arrived.

The place of execution is the bed of the river (Kamo) in the seventh division (of Kiôto): for 240 yards on all sides a fence has been tied around: within, the upright spears with naked points, and the great caldron mounted on an iron tripod! Clearing his way before him through the multitude which has assembled to see from this world the tortures of hell, comes Hayano Yatôji. Along with him Iwaki Tôma, appointed to be his colleague, reluctantly takes his seat on a camp stool. From behind them Hiôbu,
The following is a specimen of the popular lyrical poetry of the present day:

I.

Vain has been the dream
In which I thought that we met;
Awake, I find myself again
In the darkness
Of the wretched reality.
Whether I try to hope
Or give way to gloomy thought
Truly for my heart
There is no relief!

II.

If this is such a miserable world that I may not meet thee,
Oh! let me take up my abode
Deep in the far mountains
And deeper still
In their furthest depths,
Where, careless of men's gaze,
I may think of my love.

It will be observed that the metre of the above differs only slightly from naga-uta.

ELISION.

In Japanese poetry, elision may consist either in dropping
the final vowel of a word before the initial vowel of the next, or in taking away the first vowel of a word after the final vowel of the one preceding. Thus we have wag’imoko for waga-imoko, but kikanu hi’ maneku for kikanu hi’ amaneku.

Elision is optional, except when two vowels come together in different parts of a compound, in which case it is compulsory. For instance, midzu-umi, “a lake,” can never count as four syllables in poetry. It must be read midz’ umi.

Elisions are sometimes expressed in writing, but oftener they are left to the discrimination of the reader.

The vowel e cannot be elided.

Tsuiku, i.e., opposite or corresponding lines. This is a frequent ornament of Japanese naga-uta. It consists of a parallelism of meaning or construction in two consecutive or sometimes alternate lines or stanzas. Hebrew and Chinese poetry afford numerous examples of it, and even in English poetry it is not unfrequently met with. The following lines from Longfellow’s ‘Hiawatha’ are tsuiku:—

“Ye who love the haunts of nature,  
{ Love the sunshine of the meadow,  
{ Love the shadow of the forest”—

and again:—

{ “Filled the marshes full of wildfowl,  
{ Filled the river full of fishes.”

A more elaborate kind of parallelism is exemplified in the poem entitled ‘Seaweed,’ by the same author.

The following example is from the naga-uta in the Man-yōshū:—

CONSTANT LOVE.

Miyoshinu no | Mikane no take ni  
{ Hima naku zo | ame ha furu tofu (for to ifu)  
{ Tokijiku zo | yuki ha furu tofu  
{ Sono ame no | hima naki ga goto  
{ Sono yuki no | tokijiku ga goto  
Hima no ochizu | ware ha zo kofuru  
Imoga tadaka ni.
On the peak of Mikane in Miyoshinu,
{ It is said that the rain falls unceasingly,
  It is said that the snow is ever falling:
{ Like that rain which never ceases,
  Like that snow that is ever falling,
Without intermission do I long
    For thy charms.

MAKURA-KOTOBA.

Makura-kotoba, called also kamuri-kotoba or okoshi-kotoba, are a peculiar feature of Japanese poetry. They are ornamental epithets or phrases resembling in some degree the Homeric epithets of persons and places, but of a still more conventional character. Each makura-kotoba is prefixed to a few words or phrases only; and, on the other hand, the number of makura-kotoba which can be applied to the same words seldom exceeds three or four. What marks even more plainly their conventional character is the circumstance that when a word to which a makura-kotoba belongs has several meanings or applications the makura-kotoba may be applied to it in all, however meaningless or inappropriate it may be. Isanadori, "whale-catching," for instance, is an epithet of umi, "the sea"; but it is also freely applied to inland lakes, such as the lake of Ōmi (Lake Biwa), where, of course, no whales are to be found. In very many cases the word to which the makura-kotoba belongs must be taken in one sense with it, and in another with the rest of the sentence. This is the figure already described under the name Kenyōgen. [See p. 182.] Thus, in a poem about the town of Akashi it has the epithet tomoshiibi no, "of the light," because akashi also means "to throw light upon." Makura-kotoba are not invariably of the nature of adjectives. Some are the direct or indirect complements of verbs prefixed to them as a sort of ornamental introduction. In Imo ga me wo Misome no saki, the makura-
PROSODY.

kotoba, *imo ga me wo*, "thine eyes," is the accusative case governed by the verb *niisome*, "to see for the first time," which is to be supplied from *Misome no saki*, "Cape Misome."

*Makura-kotoba* almost invariably consist of five syllables, and even when they are of three, four, or six, as is sometimes the case, they always constitute the first line in *tanka*, or the first line of a couplet in *naga-uta*.

The *makura-kotoba* are one of the principal difficulties of the old poetry. They are in many cases remnants of the form of the language which existed prior to any written literature, and their derivation, meaning, and grammatical construction are often obscure.*

Examples of *makura-kotoba*:

- Nubatama no yo.
  - Black night. [*Nubatama* is the name of a black berry.]

- Ihe tsu dori kake.
  - The bird of the house, the cock.

- Ashi ga chiru Naniha.
  - Naniwa, where the reeds are scattered.

- *imo ga te wo Toroshi no ike.*
  - The pond of [taking my love's hand.

- Wag'imoko ni Ahaji no shima.
  - The island of [I shall not meet my love.

In the last two examples *Toroshi* and *Ahaji* are *ken-yō-gen*. From *Toroshi* is understood *toru*, "to take," and *Ahaji*, besides being the name of a place, also means "I shall not meet."

*Ahajima no aharedo.* Untranslatable.

Here the first two syllables of *aharedo*, "though I meet," suggest *Ahajima*, the name of an island, which is accordingly installed as a *makura-kotoba* without the slightest regard to meaning.

* The student of Japanese poetry is recommended to provide himself with the dictionary of *makura-kotoba* called *Kanjikō*, and its supplement, *Kanjizokuchō*.
Yanabuki no  
Nihotheru imo
Kakitsubata  
Nihotheru imo.
No, as in the first of these examples, often means “like” in makura-kotoba, and is often omitted, as in the second example.
Wada no soko  
Oki tsu fukami.

Arare furi  
Kashima no saki.

Arare furi is brought in here as a makura-kotoba, not in the least because Cape Kashima is noted for hail-storms, but because Kashima suggests kashimashiki, “noisy,” which is a good epithet for a hail-storm. Ordinary syntax would have required arare furu.

Joka, or “introductory verse,” is a more extended kind of makura-kotoba.

Example:—

| Adzusa yumi | te ni tori mochite |
| Masurawo no | satsuya tabasami |
| Tachimukafu | Taka-mato-yama ni |
| Haru nu yaku, &c. |

The spring-moors are burning on the hill of High-target, opposite which one stands with adzusa bow in hand and the warrior’s trusty arrows.

Here the poem really begins at Taka-mato-yama, all that precedes being only an epithet of mato, “target,” taken from the name of the mountain.
APPENDIX.

SPECIMENS OF JAPANESE.

I. PROSE PASSAGE FROM 'KOJIKI.'
II. POETRY FROM 'KOJIKI.'
III. POEM FROM 'MANYÔSHIU.'
IV. PASSAGE FROM 'TAKETORI MONOGATARI.'
V. PASSAGE FROM 'TAMA NO ARARE.'
VI. PASSAGE FROM 'HAKKENDEN.'
VII. MEMORIAL.
VIII. OFFICIAL LETTER.
IX. PRIVATE LETTER.
間甚父難待故刺左之御美豆良湯津津間
櫛之男柱一箇取鬚而燭一火入見之時宇士
多加禮斗呂呂歧豆於頭者大雷居於胸者火
若雷居於右手者土雷居於左足者鳴雷居於
右足者伏雷居於八雷神成居
ISBN^

I.

VERSION IN ROMAN LETTERS.

Koko ni sono imo1 Izanami2 no mikoto wo ahi-mimaku3 omohoshite, Yomo tsu kuni4 ni ohi-idemashiki.5 Sunahachi tonodo yori ide-mukae-masu toki ni, Izanagi no mikoto katarahi-tamahaku. "Utsukushiki6 aga7 nanimo8 no mikoto: are9 mimashi10 to tsukurerishi11 kuni imada tsukuri-wohezu areba, kaheri-masane" to nori-tamahiki.12 Koko ni Izanami no mikoto mawoshi-tamahaku. "Kuya-shiki ka mo. Toku kimasazute, a ha Yomi tsu heguhi13 shitsu.14 Shikaredomo utsukushiki a ga nase15 no mikoto iri-ki-maseru koto kashiko-kereba, kaherinan wo,16 madzu tsubaraka ni Yomo tsu kami to agetsurahamu. A17 wo na ni tamahiso." Kaku mawoshite sono tomo nuchi18 ni kaheri-iri-maseru hodo ito hisashiku te, machi-kane-tamahiki. Kare hidari no mi-midzura19 ni sasaseru yutsu20 tsuma-gushi21 no wo-bashira22 hitotsu tori-kakite, hitotsu-bi tomoshite, iri-mimasu toki ni, uji takare tororogite,23 mi-kashira ni ha oho-ikadzuchi wori, mi-mune ni ha hono-ikadzuchi wori, mi-hara ni ha kuro-ikadzuchi wori, mi-hodo ni ha saku-ikadzuchi wori, hidari no mi-te ni ha waki-ikadzuchi wori, migiri no mi-te ni ha t suchi-ikadzuchi wori, hidari no mi-ashi ni ha naru-ikadzuchi wori, migiri24 no mi-ashi ni ha fushi-ikadzuchi wori, ahasete ya-kusa no ikadzuchi-gami nari woriki.

TRANSLATION.

Hereupon (the god Izanagi) wishing to see face to face his wife the goddess Izanami, went after her to the country of Yomi. So when she came out to meet him from the palace-door, the god Izanagi thus addressed her and said: "My dear wife! the country which thou and I have made is not yet finished; therefore come back." Hereupon the goddess Izanami said: "How lamentable! By thy not having
come sooner, I have eaten of the cooking-pots of Yomi. Nevertheless, as I reverence the having entered here of thee, my beloved husband, I will return. But I will in the first place discuss it fully with the god of Yomi. Do not thou look upon me.” Having thus spoken, she returned within her palace, but her stay being very long, he was unable to wait. He broke off one of the end-teeth of the many and close-toothed comb which was stuck in the left bunch of his hair and making a light, he entered and looked. Maggots had bred and she was putrefying. On her head there sat the great-thunder; on her breast, the fire-thunder; on her belly, the black-thunder; on her groin, the cleaving-thunder; on her left hand, the young-thunder; on her right hand, the earth-thunder; on her left foot, the rumbling-thunder; on her right foot, the lying-thunder. In all, eight kinds of thunder-gods had been produced and were there.

Notes.

This is an extract from the Kojiki, one of the oldest monuments of Japanese literature. Its value to the student of the language is, however, much lessened by the fact that it has been written in Chinese characters in such a way as to render the original Japanese words extremely difficult to ascertain. Motowori’s attempt to restore the Japanese as it was read is shown in the katakana to the right of the Chinese characters, but there are many places where his version cannot possibly be correct, and it is impossible to accept it unreservedly as genuine Japanese of the period when the Kojiki was written. It will be observed that the Chinese order of the sentences is followed in the original text.

Nearly all the Chinese characters in this work are mana, i.e., they have an ideographic value, the principal exceptions being proper names, lines of poetry, and words for which the writer apparently could find no convenient Chinese equivalent.

1 Imo means in the old literature either younger sister or wife. It contains the root mo, “woman.”—2 Izanami. The characters for this word are kana.—3 Mimaku, “the seeing.” Mimaku is a noun governed in the accusative case by omohoshite.—4 Yomo tsu kuni. Tsu is the old genitive particle. Yomo or yomi, “Hades,” probably connected with yoru,
night.—\textit{Ide-mashi-ki}. There is only one Chinese character, viz. \textit{往}, for this. \textit{往}, however, represents only \textit{ide}, and the remainder is a conjecture of Motowori's. The honorific words such as \textit{masu}, \textit{tamafu}, \textit{mi}, \&c., and the suffixes are for the most part not in the original, and have been introduced by Motowori on his own authority.—\textit{Utsukushiki}, in the old language, "beloved"; in the later language, "lovely," "pretty."—\textit{Aga}, archaic for \textit{waga}.—\textit{Nanimo} for \textit{na no imo}, "thou, my wife," \textit{na} being an old word for "thou."—\textit{Ate}, archaic for \textit{awake}.—\textit{Mimashi}, an old word for "thou."—\textit{Tsukurerishi}, perfect of \textit{tsukuru}, "to make," with \textit{shi}, the attributive form of the past particle.—\textit{To nori-tamahi ki}. All this is Motowori's, and is not found in the original. \textit{Nori} is an old word meaning "to say."—\textit{He-guhi}. Motowori says that he means "a cooking place." \textit{Guhi} is the root of \textit{kusu}, "to eat," with the \textit{nigori}.—\textit{Shitsu}. \textit{Tsu} is the conclusive form of the particle \textit{tsuru}. There is nothing for it in the original.—\textit{Nase} is the masculine of \textit{nanimo} mentioned above. \textit{Se} is "elder brother," or "husband." The characters for \textit{nase} are \textit{kana}.—\textit{Wo} after \textit{kaherina} is not in the original. Its force is given in the translation by "but."—\textit{A}, archaic for \textit{awake}, "I."—\textit{Yuchi ni} is for \textit{no uchi ni}.—\textit{Mi-midzura}. \textit{Midzura} is in \textit{kana}.—\textit{Yutsu} is for \textit{i-ho-tsu}, i.e., "five hundred," put here for "a large number."—\textit{Tsuma} is connected with \textit{tsumu}, "to pack close."—\textit{Wo-bashira}, lit. "male-post," the large tooth at the end of the comb.—\textit{Uji takare tororogite}. Apparently the writer was at a loss how to express this in Chinese, and consequently had recourse to \textit{kana}.—\textit{Migiri}, archaic for \textit{migi}. 
夜久毛多都伊豆毛
夜幣賀岐
都麻碁微爾夜幣賀岐
都久流
曾能夜幣賀岐表。
II.

This line of poetry is taken from the Kojiki. It is said to be the earliest example of tanka, and dates probably from the sixth or seventh century A.D. It shows how Japanese was written before the invention of Katakana and Hiragana. The Chinese characters used here have all a phonetic value. The Katakana are an addition by a later editor.

VERSION IN ROMAN LETTERS.

Ya-kumo¹ tatsu:
Idzumo² ya-he-gaki;
Tsuma-gomi³ ni
Ya-he-gaki tsukuru:
Sono ya-he-gaki wo!

TRANSLATION.

Many clouds arise:
On all sides they form a manifold fence:
For the husband and wife to retire within
They have formed a manifold fence:
Oh! that manifold fence!

Notes.

It was the custom in ancient Japan to prepare a special hut for the consummation of a marriage. When Susanowo (the Rainstorm God) wedded Inada Hime (the Rice-field Goddess) the clouds gathered round on all sides to form such a hut for them.

¹ Ya is the same root which is also found in yatsu, "eight." It is here put generally for a large number.—² Idzumo. Motowori derives this word as the name of a province from ide-kumo, i.e., "the clouds which come forth." Idzumo is really equivalent to idzuremo or dorero, "each," i.e., "on each hand." There is no doubt an allusion to the name of the province Idzumo.—³ Tsuma-gomi. Another reading is tsuma-gome, i.e., the transitive form instead of the intransitive. This would mean "to shut up my wife or the husband and wife in," tsuma being applicable to both sexes in the old language, and not confined to either number.
春日の霞時。雨。堅。真釣。鰤。出。穏。
墨古之岸。雨出而及七日。家雨毛不来而。釣。

舟之。得乎良布見者。海界乎。過而榜行雨。つりぶねのことさらふくんを。つりぶねのことさらふくんを。つりぶねのことさらふくんを。

古之事。所。念。海若。神之女。雨。

水江之。浦。鳥見之。邂。雨。伊許。藝。
相違良比言成之賀婆
老目不為死不為而
加吉結常代爾至
永世爾有家留物手
若神之宮乃
世間之愚人之
海

わづめがたみやめ
内割之絹有殿雨
吾妹兒告而語久

わざってふのりたく

携
二人入居而

須史者家帰而

たづみものふるりりまそ

壱丸へさかへらけ

其
父母に事は告げます。此塚の書は、開して勿動常。

如明日吾者来南登。曾已良久雨堅目睛事手

言家禮婆妹之為久。墨吉爾還。来而。

常世還爾後。愛来而。家見跡宅毛見。金手

里見跡里毛見。金手。"
水江之浦、島子之
若者之皮毛、皺
家地見
わんこばし、ばくを志
へどろろみぬ
黒有之髪毛、白斑

反歌
由奈由奈波気左倍絶而
常世遷可住物手

後遂、寿死、祈流

刀・己之心柄

於曾也是君。
III.

VERSION IN ROMAN LETTERS.

THE LEGEND OF URASHIMA.

Haru no hi no | kasumeru toki ni
Suminohe no | kishi ni ide-ite
Tsuri-bune no | tayutafu¹ mireba
Inishihe no | koto zo omohoyuru.
Midzunoe no | Urashima no ko ga
Katsuwo² tsuri | tai³ tsuri-hokori
Nanuka made | ihe ni mo kozute
Unasaka⁴ wo | sugite kogi-yuku ni⁵
Watadzumi⁶ no | kami no wotome ni
Tamasaka ni | i-kogi-mukahite
Ahi-kagarahi | koto narishikaba
Kaki-musubi | toko-yo ni itari
Watadzumi no | kami no miya no
Uchi no he no | tahe naru tono ni
Tadzusahari | futari iri-ite
Oi no sezu | shini mo sezu shite
Tokoshihe ni | arikeru mono wo
Yo no naka no | shiretaru hito no
Wag'imoko ni | norite kataraku—
"Shinaraku⁷ ha | ihe ni kaherite
Chichi haha ni | koto⁸ wo mo norahi⁹
Asu no goto | ware ha kinan” to
Ihi-kereba | imo ga iheraku—
"Tokoyobe ni | mata kaheri-kite
Ima no goto | ahan to naraba
Kono kushige | hirakuna yume”¹⁰ to
Sokoraku ni | katameshi koto wo
Suminohe ni | kaheri-kitarite
Ihe miredo | ihe mo mi-kanete
Sato miredo | sato mo mi-kanete
When the days of spring were hazy,
I went forth upon the beach of Suminoe,
And, as I watched the fishing-boats rock to and fro,
I bethought me of the tale of old:
(How) Urashima of Midzunoe,
Proud of his skill in catching the katsuwo and tai,
For seven days not even coming home,
Rowed on beyond the bounds of the ocean,
Where with a daughter of the god of the sea
He chanced to meet as he rowed onwards.
When with mutual endearments their love had been crowned,
They plighted their troths, and went to the immortal land,
Where hand-in-hand both entered
Into a stately mansion within the precinct
Of the palace of the god of the sea,
There to remain for everlasting,
Never growing old, nor ever dying.
But this was the speech which was addressed to his spouse,
By the foolish man of this world—
“For a little while I would return home,
And speak to my father and my mother:
To-morrow I will come back.”
When he had said so, this was the speech of his spouse—
“If thou art to return again to the immortal land
And live with me as now,
Open not this casket at all.”
Much did she impress this on him,
But he, having returned to Suminoe,
Though he looked for his house,
No house could he see:
Though he looked for his native village,
No village could he see.
“This is strange,” said he; thereupon this was his thought—
“In the space of three years since I came forth from my home,
Can the house have vanished, without even the fence (being left)?
If I opened this casket, and saw (the result)
Should my house exist as before?”
Opening a little the jewel-casket,
A white cloud came forth from it
And spread away towards the immortal land.
He ran, he shouted, he waved his sleeves, 
He rolled upon the earth, and ground his feet together. 
Meanwhile, of a sudden, his vigour decayed and departed: 
His body that had been young grew wrinkled; 
His hair, too, that had been black grew white; 
Also his breath became feeble; bye and bye. 
Afterwards, at last his life departed, 
And of Urashima of Midzunoe, 
The dwelling-place I can see.

HANKA.
In the immortal land
He might have continued to dwell,
*But of his own natural disposition,
How foolish was he, this wight!

NOTES.
The Manyošiiu, as may be seen from this specimen, is written in 
mana, with kana intermixed. The kana are however, much more 
umerous than in the Kojiki, and there is the additional guide of the
metre, so that there is here some certainty that we have before us the
genuine Japanese language of the period. In fact, it is by means of the
knowledge of the old language acquired from the Manyošiiu that Moto-
worI has endeavoured to restore the Japanese version of the Kojiki.

Metre.—For the metre of this poem see under Naga-uta, p. 186.
1 Tayutatafu. Another reading is toworafu, a lengthened form of toworu, 
"to pass."—2 Katsuwo. The bonito.—3 Tai, the serranus marginalis, a
fish greatly prized in Japan as a delicacy.—4 Unasaka, the same as umi-
saka, "the bounds of ocean," "the horizon."—5 Sugite kogi-yuku ni. 
This line has a syllable too many.—6 Watadzumi, for wata-tsu-umi, wata
being an old word for "sea," and tsu the genitive particle.—7 Shimaraku, 
old form for "shibaraku."—8 Koto nearly always means something said
in the old language.—9 Norahi, a lengthened form instead of nori.
—10 Yume, "a dream." Hirakuna yume, "open not even a dream," i.e.
not at all. Tsuyu, "dew," is used in the same way.—11 The yu. Yu is
old Japanese for yori.—12 Dete. The initial i is removed by elision for
the sake of the metre.—13 Useme. Me is the perfect form of the future suffix
mu. It is not unfrequently found before ya.—14 Moto no goto. Later
Japanese would have gotoku.—

Shirakumo no. The complement to no is to be supplied from tanabikinureba, "as there was an extending away of a white cloud," &c.—

Yuna-yuna, an adverb, "nightly," connected with yo or yoru, "night."—

Sahe, "too." This is the original meaning of sahe.—

Ihe-dokoro is interpreted by Motowori to mean the ruins of the house. It may perhaps mean his tomb, by a figure not uncommon in Japanese poetry.—

Tsurugi-dachi is a makura-kotoba consisting of two words meaning "sword." I have not been able to find any satisfactory explanation of its being prefixed to shi, the reflexive pronoun.

Oso ya. Oso is the root of osoki, "slow," "dull," "foolish."
生きぬく限かくありきと
かたへと海たへおむかへ
あきまじて我圍の国へこされぬ
あきまじて我圍の国へこされぬ

入れぬと君は勿論\な
はなにかを

さとすら
さとすら
"はなにかを\"
Okina miko\(^1\) ni\(^2\) mafusu\(^3\) Yo.\(^4\) Ika naru\(^5\) tokoro ni ka\(^6\) kono\(^7\) ki ha\(^8\) safurahiken\(^9\) Ayashiku\(^10\) uruhashiku medetaki\(^11\) mono ni mo\(^12\) to\(^13\) mafusu.\(^14\) "Saotodoshi\(^15\) no kisaragi\(^16\) no towoka goro ni, Naniha yori fune ni norite, umi-naka ni idete\(^18\) yukan\(^19\) kata mo shirazu\(^20\) oboeshikado,\(^21\) omafu koto kotorade,\(^22\) yo no naka ni iki\(^23\) nanika ha\(^24\) sen\(^25\) to omohishikaba,\(^26\) tada munashiki kaze ni makasete ariku.\(^27\) Inochi shinaba,\(^28\) ikaga ha sen; ikite aran\(^29\) kagiri,\(^30\) kakari arikite Hôrai to\(^32\) ifuran\(^33\) yama ni afu\(^34\) ya to\(^35\) umi ni kogi tadayahi-arikite, waga kuni\(^36\) no uchi\(^37\) wo hanarete arikimekari shi\(^38\) ni, aru toki ha nami aretsutsu,\(^39\) umi no soko ni mo irinubeku,\(^40\) aru toki ni ha, kaze ni tsukete\(^41\) shiranu\(^42\) kuni ni fuki-yoserarete,\(^43\) oni no yo naru\(^44\) mono ide-kite\(^45\) korosan\(^46\) to shiki. Aru toki ni ha koshi-kata\(^47\) yuku suhe mo shirade\(^48\) umi ni magiren\(^49\) to shi,\(^50\) aru toki ni ha, kate tsukite, kusa no ne wo kuhi-mono to shi, aru toki ihan\(^51\) kata naku mukutsuge naru mono no\(^52\) kite kuhi-kakaran to shiki. Aru toki ha umi no kai wo torite inochi wo tsugu. Tabi no sora ni tasuke-tamafubekihito mo naki tokoro ni iro-iro\(^53\) no yamahei wo shite yuku kata sora mo obohazu, fune no yuku ni makasete\(^54\) umi ni tadayohi ihoka\(^55\) to ifu. Tatsu no koku bakari ni umi no naka ni wadzuka ni yama miyu.\(^56\) Fune no uchi\(^57\) nan semete miru. Umi no uhe ni tadayoheri\(^58\) yama ito ohoki\(^59\) nite ari. Sono yama no sama takaku\(^60\) uruhashi. Kore ya waga motomuru\(^61\) yama naramu to omohite sasuga ni osoroshiku obohete yama no meguri wo sashimegurashite futsuka mika\(^62\) bakari ni-ariku ni, ama-bito no yosohohi shitaru\(^63\) womina yama no naka yori ide-kite shiro-gane no kana-maru wo mochite midzu wo kumiariku. Kore wo mite, fune yori orite, ‘Kono yama no na wo nani to ka mafusu’ to tofu. Womina kotahete ifu—‘Kore ha Hôrai no yama nari’ to kotafu. Kore wo kiku ni, ureshiki
Thus spoke the old man to the prince: "In what manner of place can this tree have been? What a marvellous, graceful, and lovely thing it is!" Thus he spoke, and the prince answered and said: "Three years ago, on the tenth day of the second month, we embarked from Naniwa (Osaka). When we put forth into the mid-ocean, we knew not even the direction in which to go, but as I felt that unless my heart's desire were fulfilled what should I do living in this world, we sailed on, merely trusting our course to the empty winds. If our lives perish, what help is there for it—so long as life remains, sailing on thus, we shall reach, it may be, this mountain called, if we are rightly informed, Hôrai. With such thoughts we rowed on over the ocean; and tossed about until we left the bounds of our own country far behind us. In the wanderings which we then made, we were at one time like to go down even to the bottom of the sea whilst the waves were raging; at another time, driven by the wind, we were borne to an unknown land, where creatures like devils came forth and endeavoured to slay us. At one time, knowing neither the way we had come nor the course we ought to follow, we were almost lost upon the sea; at another time our provisions became spent and we used the roots of herbs for food. Once, beings hideous beyond expression came and attempted to devour us, and once we sustained life by gathering the shells of the sea. Under a strange sky where there was none to render us aid, we tossed about over the sea a prey to diseases of all kinds, and leaving the ship to her own spontaneous motion, for we knew not at all what course we should follow. At last when five hundred days had passed, about the hour of the dragon (8 A.M.) a mountain became
faintly visible in the midst of the sea. All in the ship looked steadily at it and saw that it was a very great mountain which floated about on the surface of the sea. The appearance of this mountain was lofty and picturesque. Thinking that this was doubtless the mountain of our search, no wonder we were filled with awe. After we had sailed round it for two or three days there came forth from amongst the hills a woman clothed like an inhabitant of heaven, and drew water in a silver vessel. Upon seeing her we landed from the ship, and asked what might be the name of this mountain. The woman replied and said: 'This is the mountain Hôrai.' Our joy at hearing this was unbounded. We inquired 'Who is the woman who tells us so?' 'My name is Hôkanruri,' she said, and of a sudden went away in amongst the hills.'

NOTES.

This passage is taken from the *Taketori Monogatari*, a work of the classical age of Japanese literature.

1. *Miko*, "a prince," is compounded of the honorific prefix *mi* and *ko*, "a child."—2 *Ni* is the dative suffix.—3 *Mafusu* is the attributive or adjectival form of the verb *mafusu* (pron. *mósu*), "to speak."—4 *Yo*, "manner," is a noun in the nominative case, placed absolutely. It is, however, possible to supply some such words as *kore nari* after *yo*. This will be literally "The manner of speech of the old man to the prince was this." *Miko ni mafusu* is in this sentence an attributive clause qualifying *yo*. The Japanese language employs attributive clauses exclusively where a European language often prefers a construction involving the use of a relative pronoun. Thus *miko ni mafusu yo* might be rendered in English "The manner in which he addressed the prince."—5 *Naru*, "to be," is here in the attributive form because it qualifies the noun *tokoro*. *Ika naru tokoro ni* is literally "in a how being place."—6 *Ka* is the interrogative particle. It is in this sentence redundant, a question being already implied by the use of the word *ika.*—7 *Kono* is the adjectival form of *kore*, "this."—8 *Ha* is the distinctive or separative particle. It has here the force of concentrating the attention on the word *ki.*—9 *Safurahi-ke-n.* *Safurahi* is the adverbial form of the verb *safurasu*, "to be." [See p. 163.] The adverbial form is required before the particle *ke*. *Ke* is the negative base of the past suffix *shi*. The negative base is required.
before な, which is the conclusive form of the future suffix な or ます. すなわち-ke-な is literally “will have been.”

10. Ayashiku uruhoshikun medetaki mono. Note that of the three adjectives qualifying つ, the last only is put in the attributive form, the two which precede being placed in the adverbial form.

11. Medetaki is derived from medzuru, ‘to love.’ The letter と は here read de, although there is no mark to show that this is the case. The negori is omitted all through this passage, which is a facsimile of the Japanese printed edition.

12. は has here scarcely any meaning. After とな must be understood は, which with the preceding な make up なる, the conclusive form of なる, ‘to be.’

13. と is a conjunction which may often be translated ‘that,’ but which cannot be conveniently rendered in this passage by any English word. It may be considered to be represented by the marks of quotation ‘ ’.

14. Mafusu, “he said,” is redundant, as the same idea has been already expressed in the words mafusu とした above. Note that は is a poetical substitute for たまつ, a honorific word for まつする. It is here a noun in the nominative case, placed absolutely.

15. Sa-oto-doshi. おと-どし means “the year before last.” The addition of で (for とき, “before”) makes it mean another year further back.

16. Me is the adverbial form of つるる. “to go out.”

17. いつ is いつ, the negative base of いつ, “to go,” with the attributive form of the future suffix な or ます.

18. しはる is し, the negative base of しる, “to know,” with ず, the adverbial form of the negative suffix な. しはる is here an adverb qualifying the verb おぼえ which follows.

19. Oboe-shika-do ば is おぼえ, adverbial form of the verb oboeru, “to think,” “to feel;” し is the perfect of the past suffix し, and ば is the concessive particle meaning “although.” しはる おぼえ-し is おぼえ, which follows.

20. と is the adverbial form of いくる, “to live.”

21. Se-n is せ, the negative base of the irregular verb する, “to do,” with the conclusive form of the future particle な.

22. はは is は, negative base of な, “to be,” with the indeclinable negative suffix で.

23. いる is the adverbial form of いくる, “to live.”

24. は is は, after the interrogative suggests a negative answer.

25. はは is は, the negative base of the irregular verb する, “to do,” with the conclusive form of the future particle な.

26. ば is ば, adverbial form of the verb ばる, “to think;” しき, perfect of し, the past suffix, and ば, a suffix which after perfect forms means “as,” “since,” or “because.”

27. は is the conclusive form of the verb はる or はる, “to walk,” “to go.”
Shina-ba is shina, negative base of the irregular verb shinuru, “to die,” with ba, a suffix which with this base means “if.” — Ara-n is ara, negative base of aru, “to be,” with the attributive form of the future particle n. — Kagiri, “limit,” is the root of the verb kagiru, “to come to an end.” It is here a noun. Iki-te ara-n kagiri. Lit. “the limit of our being alive, i.e. “so long as we remain alive.” — Kaku, vulg. kō, “thus.” — Hōrai to ifu, called “Hōrai.” To has the force of the inverted commas before and after “Hōrai.” — Ifu-ra-n. Ifu is the verb “to say,” “to call;” ra is for ara, negative base of aru, “to be,” and n is the future particle which has here a force which is attempted to be rendered in the translation “if we are rightly informed.” — Afu ya. Afu is the conclusive form. Ya is an interrogative particle, but the question which it puts is addressed to the speaker himself, not to another. See the translation. — To. After to must be understood omohi-te. — Wa-ga kuni, i.e. Japan. — Uchi is literally “the inside.” — Makari is probably an error of the text. The true reading is no doubt mawari, “to go about,” “to wander.” Shi is the attributive form of the past suffix. It is here a noun, as is seen by its having the particle ni suffixed. Arikimawarashi ni is “in the wanderings we then made.” — Tsutsu. The particle tsutsu shows that the actions signified by the verbs are and irinubeku are regarded as simultaneous. — Iri-nu-beku is iri, adverbial form of iru, “to enter”; nu, conclusive form of the suffix nuru, and beku, adverbial form of the suffix beki. Nu is equal to te shima of the spoken language, beku has the meaning “probable,” and the ki at the end of the sentence must be taken with iri-nu-beku as well as with shi, so that the full translation will be “Were (ki) like to (beku) enter (iri) utterly (nu).” — Tsukete. Tsuki-te (or tsuite) is the modern form. — Shira-nu is shira, negative base of shiru, “to know,” followed by the attributive form of the negative particle nu. — Fuki-yoserarete. Fuki, adverbial form of fuku, “to blow,” is an adverb qualifying yoserare. Yoserare is the adverbial form of the passive of the transitive of the verb yoru, “to approach.” — Yō naru is the colloquial yōna. — Ide-ki-te, is ide adverbial form of idzuru, “to come out”; ki, adverbial form of kuru, “to come,” and te, adverbial form of the suffix tsuru. — Korosa-n to shi-ki is literally “they made that they would kill us.” — Koshi-kata. One of the irregularities of kuru, “to come,” is that it attaches, as here, the past suffix shi to the negative base ko instead of to the adverbial form ki. — Shira-de is shira, negative base of shiru, “to know,” with the negative suffix de. — Magire-n is magire, negative base of the verb of the second conjugation magiru, “to mingle,” “to become indistinct,” with n the future suffix in the conclusive form. — Shi is the adverbial form of
suru, “to do,” “to make.” The past suffix ki at the end of the sentence must be taken with this shi as well as with the word along with which it is found.—$^{51}$ Iha-n. Iha is the negative base of ifu, “to say.” Iha-n kata naku, “unspeakably.”—$^{52}$ Mono no. See p. 107.—$^{53}$ Iro-iro. Iro means “colour,” iro-iro, “every colour,” hence “all kinds of.”—$^{54}$ Yuki ni makasete. Yuki, “to go,” is here treated as a noun in the sense of *yukii*.*ni_s shi.*$^{55}$ Iha is the negative base of ifu,* to say.* Iha-i kata miku, “unspeakably.”—$^{56}$ Jifono no. See p. 107.—$^{57}$ h'o-iro. Iro means “colour,” iro-iro, “every colour,” hence “all kinds of.”—$^{58}$ Yiiku ni makasete. Yukii, “to go,” is here treated as a noun in the sense of *yukii*.*ni_s shi.*$^{59}$ I-ho-ka, “five hundred days,” is derived from i, root of itsutsu, “five,” ho, an old word meaning “hundred,” and ku, the termination of the numerals for days.—$^{60}$ Miyu is the conclusive form of miyuru, “to appear,” “to be visible,” the intransitive verb corresponding to the transitive miru, “to see.”—$^{61}$ Fune no uchi wo. There is probably something wrong in the text here; wo can hardly be right, but the meaning is no doubt that given in the translation.—$^{62}$ Tadayoheni is the attributive form of the perfect of tadayofu, “to toss about.”—$^{63}$ Ohoki is the predicate, the construction being yama ohoki nari (ni+ari), “the mountain is a great one.”—$^{64}$ Takaku is the adverbial form, while uruhashi (second conjugation of adjectives) which follows is put in the conclusive form. The meaning is the same as if both were in the conclusive form, viz., “was lofty and picturesque.”—$^{65}$ Waga motomuru yama. Note the force of the attributive form motomuru as equal to the relative clause “which (we) are in search of.”—$^{66}$ Mika. In the modern language mitsuka, pronounced mikka.—$^{67}$ Shitaru. Note the force of the termination taru, indicating a continuous state.—$^{68}$ Ureshiki koto is put, by an idiom very common in the spoken language, for the abstract noun ureshisa.—$^{69}$ Kono womina and kaku notamafu are both nouns in the nominative case, placed in apposition. A more regular construction would have been kaku notamafu womina.—$^{70}$ Iri-nu. The nu is represented by the word “away” in the translation.
V.
VERSION IN ROMAN LETTERS.

Kaha wo kosu.

*Yama ha*¹ koyu to² ihi, kaha ha wataru to ifu³ zo sadamari-

naru.¹ Shikaru zo⁵ ima no hito tabi-ji no nikki nado ni

“nani-gaha wo koshite” nado kaku⁶ ha imishiki⁷ higakoto

nari. Ima no hito ha kachi-watari naradeha⁸ “wataru” to ha

ihanedo,⁹ mukashi ha¹⁰ umi kaha ha, hashi ni mare,¹¹ fune ni

mare, nani ni mare, subete¹² “wataru” to koso ihi-tsure.¹³ Mata

yama ha “koyu” to ihedomo,¹⁴ sore mo “kosu” to ha ihazu,¹⁵

“Koyu” to¹⁶ “kosu” to ha jiia¹⁷ no kejime ari. Mashite¹⁸ kaha

ni “kosu” to ifu koto arame ya¹⁹ ha²⁰?

TRANSLATION.

Kaha wo kosu (to cross a river).

In the case of a mountain, it is the rule to say “koyu” (to cross); in the case of a river, to say “wataru” (to cross). The use which, notwithstanding this rule, is made by men of the present day in their journals of travel, &c., of such expressions as “nani-gaha wo koshite” (having crossed such and such a river) and the like, is a great error. Except in the case of crossing by fording, writers of the present day do not say “wataru,” whereas in ancient times the word “wataru,” and no other, was used generally for crossing the sea or river, whether on a bridge or in a boat, or in any manner whatsoever. Again, although in the case of a mountain “koyu” was said, yet even in this case no one said “kosu.” Between “koyu” and “kosu” there is the distinction of intransitive and transitive. Still more is it unlikely that there should be such an expression as “kosu” in speaking of rivers.

NOTES.

This extract is from the *Tama no Arare*, a work of the well-known grammarian Motowori Norinaga.
Ha (pron. wa). It is ha which is translated "in the case of."—

To is equivalent to the marks of quotation " ."—

Ifu is a noun, nominative to naru.—

Naru. The attributive instead of the conclusive form, because zo occurs previously in the sentence. [See p. 167.]—

Wo "notwithstanding." [See p. 115]—

Kaku, a noun, nominative to nari.

Imishiki, an adjective of the second conjugation in the attributive form, qualifying higakoto.—

Naradeha, lit. "if it be not," is nara, neg. base of naru, "to be," de, the indeclinable negative particle, and ha, the distinctive or separative particle.—

Ifu-ne-do is ifu, negative base of ifu, "to say"; ne, perfect of the negative particle nu, and do, the concessive particle.—

Ha. Note the force of ha in marking the opposition between ima no hito and mukashi.—

Mare is for mo are, are being the imperative mood of aru, "to be."—

Sube-te may be translated "generally." It is the adverbial form of the verb suberu, "to include," with te, the adverbial form of the particle tsuru.—

Ihi-tsure. The perfect is used instead of the conclusive form, because koso occurs previously in the sentence. [See p. 170.]:

Do-mo is literally "though one has said," but means here nothing more than "although." Ihe is the perfect form (before do) of the verb ifu "to say."—

Iha-zu. Zu is the conclusive form of the negative particle nu.—

To repeated after koyu and kosu means simply "and."—

Ji-ta. Ji means "oneself," ta, "another"; ji-ta means here "intransitive and transitive."—

Mashi is the adverbial form of masu, "to increase"; with te it has an adverbial force, viz., "increasingly," "much more."—

Ara-me is put here for the perfect future ara-me-ri, [See p. 153.]:

Ha after an interrogative clause shows that a negative answer is expected. [See p. 122.]
夫の日暮が素藤へ先近入啓達呪て奥出る小室を搗くて戸帳を垂て。嫌な、香爐をなぞる、準備をぞくも整ひて、百足虎と喫覚むタ謝る差し。そして姉嫁に面せば、片の此良徳熟眠して吶ぎる呪を覚まとし左右は柵より。更闘べを子の手ふるべか。素藤嫌燥且疑ひ。みよ。其首をついて喫覚むを、程に春をうる疎ら覚て氷をひ吸ひ呪を引と出として末出は素藤やと喫近。
VI.
VERSION IN ROMAN LETTERS.

Kono hi mo kureshikaba, Motofuji ha madzu kinjiu ra ni ihitsukete, okumaritari kozashiki wo kaki-harahashi, tobari wo tarete, shokudai tsukue koro nando no yōi hayaku mo totonohikereba, “Happiaku bikuni wo yobisamashite, yufu-zen wo susumeyo” to te, koshimoto ra tsukahaseshi ni, “kudan no bikuni ha umahi shite, yobedomo yobedomo, samezu” to ifu. Tokaku suru hodo ni kō takete, haya ne no nakaba ni narishikaba, Motofuji iradachi katsu utagahite, midzukara soko ni omomukite, yobi-samasan to seshi hodo ni, Miyōchin yō-yaku nemuri samete, midzu wo kohi, kuchi sosogite, hikarete idete kinikereba, Motofuji ya! ya! to yobi-chikadzukete, “Niobosatsu, sudeni kano go ni narinu.”

TRANSLATION.

When this sun too had set, Motofuji, in the first place giving orders to the attendants, caused to be swept out a small reception room at the rear of the house, and hung a curtain before the door; and as the preparation of candlesticks, table and censer, &c., was already complete, sent the maid-servants, saying, “Awake the nun Happiaku, and offer her supper.” But they said that the nun was in a deep sleep, and that however much they called her, she did not awake. Whilst doing this and that it grew late, and it had become already the middle of the hour of the rat (midnight), so that Motofuji, partly enraged, and partly suspicious, went there in person and attempted to awake her. When he did so, Miyōchin awoke from sleep with difficulty. She asked for water, and having rinsed her mouth came forth led by the hand. Motofuji called her to him, exclaiming, “Come, come, your Holiness! the hour appointed has already arrived.”
This passage is taken from the *Hakkenden*, a romance by the popular writer Bakin, published in 1834.

1 *Kureshikaba*. *Kure* is the adverbial form of *kururu* "to set," *shika*, perfect form of past particle *shi*, and *ba*, a particle having here the force of "when," "as."—2 *Okumaru* is a hybrid word, the root *oku* being Chinese, and the termination Japanese.—3 *Harakasu* (pron. *harawasu*) is not the causative proper of *harasu* which would be *harahasuru* or *harahisan-suru*. *Harahasu* means "to make swept out," *harahisan-suru* "to cause some one to sweep out."—4 *Nando*. The *n* being written in *katakana* shows that the writer looks upon it as properly not belonging to this word, which is usually written *nado*. It is possible that *nani to* from which *nando* is derived may have first been contracted into *nado* and the *n* inserted afterwards for euphony, but it seems more likely that *nando* is really a transition form between *nani to* and *nado*.—5 *To te* is for *to te*.—6 *Tsukahaseshi*. The verb is *tsukahasu*, and *shi*, the past participle, is added to the adverbial form. We ought therefore to have had *tsukahashishi*, but the modern popular language prefers the form ending in *seshi*.—7 *Seshi*. It is one of the irregularities of *suru* that it always adds *shi* and *shika* to the negative base instead of to the adverbial form. —8 *Ya! ya!* is an interjection. Interjections are usually printed in *katakana* as here.
建　

言

某等別紙奉呈言候次弟平生持論ノ如其等在官中屢及言候者モハ有之候肆欧米同盟各國ハ大使御派出之上實地ノ景況ヲ御目擊二相成リ其上事宜斟酌施設可相成トノ御評議ヲ有ノ然ルニ最早ハ大使御巡行以来既ニ數月ヲ閲シ候得共何等ノ御施設ヲ需

義畢竟天下公議ノ雍塞スル故ト実以殘念ノ至ニ奉存候此段宜數御評議ヲ可被遂

候也

明治七年第一月十七日

高知縣貫属士族
古澤　迂

岡本　健三郎

同

名東縣貫属士族
小室　信夫

由利　公正

敦賀縣貫属士族
古国图

图解

图释

图注
何ソヤ昨十月政府ノ変革三就テ之ヲ験スヲ為テ其危哉我政府ノ孤立スル
解散ヲ請ヒ已ハ全民撰議院ヲ立ハ政府ノ人民ノ間に情實ヲ通而指示ニ合テ一体ト

臣等既三天下ノ大理ニ就テ之ヲ究メ我國今ヨノ勢ニ就テ之ヲ察ニシテ政府ノ職ヲ就テ

之ヲ論シ及昨十月政府ノ変革ニ就テ之ヲ験ス而臣等ノ自ラ臣等ノ信スルノ願

體ヲ切ヲ謂フ今日天下ヲ維持ヲ振ヲスルノ道唯其撰議院ヲ立ハ而下ノ公議ヲ張ルニ在ル

而ト其方法等ノ議ノ如キ臣等必ス之ヲ兹ニ言ハス蓋ニ十数枚紙能ク之ヲ尽ス者

三非レハ也且臣等切ニ聞テ今日有司持重ノ説ヲ隠し事ヲ多ツ因循ヲ務メ世ノ改革ヲ

言ヲ否ノシテ軽々進歩ヲ為スヲ拒ムニ尚早キノ事ヲ以テ臣等諸説ヲ合テ之ヲ辩
如果 $t = 7$，则

$\frac{1}{t} = \frac{1}{7}$
SPECIMENS OF JAPANESE.

VII.

VERSION IN ROMAN LETTERS.

Soregashi ra¹ besshi kengen tatematsuri² safurafu (pronounced sôrô, sôro, or even soro) shidai heizei no jiron ni shite, soregashi ra zaikwan-chiu shiba-shiba kengen ni³ oyobi⁴ safurafu mono mo kore ari safurafu tokoro;⁵ Yôhei⁶ dômei kakkoku he taishi on hashutsu no uhe, jitchi no keikiô wo mo⁷ on moku-geki ni ahi-nari;⁸ sono uhe jigi shinshaku shisetsu ahi-narubeku to no go hiôgi mo kore⁹ ari. Shikaru¹⁰ ni mohaya taishi go kichô irai sudeni sugetsu wo kemishi safurahedomo¹¹ nani ra no go shisetsu mo haishô tsukamatsurazu, sakkon minshin kiôkiô, shôka ahi-utagahi, yaya mo sureba, tohô gwakai no chô kore nashi to mo mafushi-gataki¹² ikihô ni tachi-itari safurafu gi¹³ hikkiô tenka yoron kögi no yôsoku suru yuhe to jitsu mochite zannen no itari¹⁴ ni zonji tatematsuri safurafu. Kono dan yoroshiku go hiôgi wo togerarubeku¹⁵ safurafu nari.

Meiji shichi nen dai ichi gwatsu jiu-shichi nichi.

Kôchi ken kwanzoku shizoku Furusaha Urô,¹⁶

" " " " " Okamoto Kenzaburô.
Miôdô " " " " Komuro Nobuwo.
Tsuruga ken " " " " Yuri Kimmasa.
Sagô " " " " Etô Shimpei.
Kô-chi " " " " Itagaki Taisuke.
Tôkiô Fu " " " " Gotô Shôjirô.
Saga Ken " " " " Sohejima Taneomi.
Sain¹⁷ " " " " On Chiu

Shinra¹⁸ fushite¹⁹ hôkon seiken no kisuru tokoro wo sassuru ni, kami teishitsu ni arazu, shimo jimmin ni arazu, shikaushite hitori yôshi ni kisu. Sore²⁰ yôshi kami teishitsu wo tatsutobu to ihazaru ni ha arazu; shikaushite teishitsu yôyaku sono soni wo ushinafu; shimo jimmin wo tamoitsu to ihazaru ni ha arazu; shikaushite seirei hiaku tan chôshutsu bokai matsurigoto jôjitsu ni nari, shôbatsu aizô ni idzu, genro yôhei konku
tsuguru nashi. Sore kakunogotoku ni shite, tenka no chian naran koto wo hossu? Sanseki no dōji mo naho sono fuka naru wo shiru. Injo aratamezu, osoraku ha kokka tohō no ikihohi wo itasan. Shin ra aikoku no jō onodzukara yamu atahazu, sunahachi kore wo shinkiu suru no michi wo kōkiu suru ni tada tenka no kōgi wo haru ni aru nomi. Tenka no kōgi wo haru ha minsen giin wo tatsu suru ni aru nomi, sunahachi yūshi no ken kagiru tokoro arite shikaushite shōka sono anzen kōfuku wo ukuru mono aran. Kofu tsuhi ni kore wo chinsen.

Sore jimmin seifu ni tai-shi sozei wo harasu no ginu aru mono ha sunahachi sono seifu no koto wo yochi kahi suru no kenri wo yū-su. Kore tenka no tsuiron ni shite mata chōchō shin ra no kore wo zeigen suru wo matazaru mono nari. Yuhe ni shin ra hisoka ni negafu yūshi mata kono tairi ni kōtei sezaran koto wo. Ima minsen giin wo tatsu suru no gi wo kobannu mono ihaku. "Waga tami fugaku muchi, imada kaimei no eki ni susumazu, yuhe ni konjitsu minsen giin wo tatsu suru naho masani hayak'aru beshi" to. Shin ra onohe-raku noshi hatashite makoto ni sono ifu tokoro no gotoki ka, sunahachi kore wo shite gaku katsu chi shikaushite kiu ni kaimei no eki ni susunashinuru no michi sunahachi minsen giin wo tatsu suru ni ari. Nani to nareba, sunahachi konjitsu waga jimmin wo shite gaku katsu chi ni kaimei no eki ni susunashimen to su, madzu sono tšiği kaimi wo hōgo seshime, kore wo shite, jison jichō, tenka to yūraku wo tomo ni suru no kishō wo okosashimen to suru ha, kore wo okosashimen to suru ha, kore wo shite tenka no koto no adzukarashinuru ni ari. Kaku no gotoku shite, jimmin sono korō ni yasunji, fugaku muchi midzukara amanzuru mono imada kore arazaru nari. Shikaushite ima sono midzukara gaku katsu chi ni shite midzukara sono kaimi wo eki ni iru wo matsu. Kore hotondo hiaku nen kasi wo matsu no rui ari. Hana-hadashiki ha sunahachi ima niwaka ni giin wo tatsu suru ha kore tenka no gu
wo atsumuruni sugizaru nomi to ifu ni itaru. A ! nanzo mid-zukara ogoru no hanahadashiku,11 shikaushite sono jimmin wo miru no betsujo taru ya!12 Yûshi chiu chikô moto yori hito ni suguru mono aran, shikaredomo idzukunzo gakumon yûshiki no hito yo43 mata shojin ni suguru mono arazaru wo shiran ya?11 Kedashi tenka no hito kakunogotoku besshi subekarazaru nari. Moshi hata besshi subeki mono to seba, yûshi mata sono uchi no itsujin narazu ya? Shikaraba sunahachi hitoshiku kore fugaku mushiki nari. Kinkin yûshi no sensai to jimmin no yoron kôgi wo haru to sono kengu fushô hatashite ikan zo ya? Shin ra ifu. Yûshi no chi mata kore wo ishin izen ni miru, kanarazu sono susumishi mono naran. Nani to nareba,15 sunahachi ningen ni chishiki naru mono ha kanarazu sono kore wo mochiyuru ni shitagahite susumu mono nareba nari. Yuhe ni ihaku. “Minsen giûn wo tatsu kore sunahachi jimmin wo shite gaku katsu chi ni shikaushite kiu ni kai mei no eki ni susumashimuru wo mitchi nari”46 to. Katsu sore seifu no shoku sono yoroshiku hô-shite mochite mokuteki to nasubeki mono jimmin wo shite, shimpo suru wo eseshimuru47 ni48 ari. Yuhe ni somai no yo yaban no zoku sono tami yûmo bôkan shikaushite shitagafu tokoro49 wo shirazu. Kono toki ni atarite seifu no shoku moto yori kore wo shite shitagafu tokoro wo shirashimuru50 ni ari. Ima waga kuni sudeni somai ni arazu. Shikaushite waga jimmin no jiujun naru mono51 sudeni kwajin to su.52 Shikaraba sunahachi konjitsu waga seifu no yoroshiku mochite sono mokuteki to nasubeki mono sunahachi minsen giûn wo tate, waga jimmin wo shite,53 sono kani no ki wo okoshi, tenka wo bunin suru no gimu wo benchi shi, tenka no koto ni sanyo shi, eseshimuru ni ari. Sunahachi kôkoku no hito mina dôshin nari. Sore seifu no tsuyoki mono nani wo mochite kore wo itasu ya? Tenka jimmin mina dôshin nareba nari. Shin ra kanarazu towoku kinji wo hikite kore wo shô-sezu, katsu saku jingwatsu seifu no henkaku ni tsukite, kore wo ken-su. Kiu
kiu ko sore ayafuhi kana! Waga seifu no koritsu suru ha nanzo ya? Saku jingwatsu seifu no henkaku tenka jimmin no kore waga tame ni kiseki seshi mono ikubaku\textsuperscript{54} ka aru? Tada kore ga tame ni kiseki sezaru nomi narazu, tenka jimmin no bô to shite kore wo shirazaru mono jiu ni shite\textsuperscript{55} hakku ni oru. Tada heitai no kaisan ni odoroku nomi.\textsuperscript{56} Ima minsen giin wo tatsuru ha sunahachi seifu jimmin no ahida ni jôjitsu yûtsû shikaushite ahi-tomo ni ahasete ittai to nari, kuni hajimete mochite\textsuperscript{57} tsuyokarubeshi; seifu hajimete mochite tsuyokarubeki nari.

Shin ra suden tenka no tairi ni tsukite kore wo kihame, waga kuni konjitsu no ikihoi ni tsukite kore wo jitsu ni shi, seifu no shoku ni tsukite kore wo ronji, oyo obi sakujingwatsu seifu no henkaku ni tsukite kore wo ken-su. Shikaushite shinra no midzukara shin ra no setsu wo shinzuru koto iyo-yo atsuku, setsu ni ifu—“Konjitsu tenka wo iji shinki suru no michi tada minsen giin wo tate, shikaushite tenka no kôgi wo haru ni aru nomi” to.\textsuperscript{58} Sono hôhô tô\textsuperscript{59} no gi no gotoki\textsuperscript{60} shin ra kanarazu kore wo kokoni ihazu. Kedashi jiu-su-mai-shi\textsuperscript{61} no yoku kore wo tsukusuru mono ni arazareba nari. Tada shin ra hisoka\textsuperscript{62} ni kiku “konjitsu yûshî jichô no setsu ni yori koto ohoku injun wo tsutome, yo no kaikaku wo ifu mono wo moku-shite keikei shimpô to shi, shikaushite kore wo kobanu ni ‘naho hayaki’ no niji wo mochite su” to. Shin ra kofû\textsuperscript{63} mata kore wo benzen.

Sore keikei shimpô to ifu mono\textsuperscript{64} moto yori shin ra no kai-sezaru tokoro, moshi hatashite koto sôsotsu ni idzuru mono wo mochite keikei shimpô to suru ka, minsen giin naru mono ha mochite koto wo teichô ni suru tokoro no mono\textsuperscript{65} nari: hakushô fuwa ni shite shikaushite henkô no sai koto homnatsu kwankiu no jo wo shusshî hisshi no shisetsu ahi-mizaru mono wo mochite\textsuperscript{66} keikei shimpô to suru ka, kore kuni ni teiritsu naku yûshî jini hôkô sureba nari. Kono futatsu no mono araba sunahichi masa ni sono minsen giin no tatezunba arubekara-
"Naho hayaki" no niji no minsi gen wo tatsu no ateru, shin ra tada ni kore wo kai-sezaru nomi narazu, shin ra no ken masa ni kore to ahi-han-su. Ikan to nerea, konjitsu minsi gen wo tatsu no naho osoraku ha saigetsu no hisashiki wo machi shikaushite nochi hajime to sono jiubun gambi wo kisuru ni itaran. Yuhe ni shin ra ichijitsu no tada sono tatsu koto no osokaran koto wo osoru. Yuhe ni ihaku "shin ra tada sono hantai wo miru nomi" to.

Yushi no setsu mata ifu 'Yobei kakkoku konjitsu no gen naru mono ha itchô sseki ni setsuritsu seshi no gen ni arazu, sono shimp no zen wo mochite kore wo itaseshi mono nomi, yuhe ni waga konjitsu niwaka ni kore wo mo-suru wo ezu to. Sore shimp no zen wo mochite kore wo itaseshi mono anii hitori gen nomi naran ya? Ohoyoso hiaku no gakumon gijitsu kikai mina shikaru nari. Shikaru ni kare suhiaku nen no hisashiki wo tsumite kore wo itaseshi mono ha kedashi mayeni seiki naku, mina midzukara kore wo keiken hatsunei seshi nareba nari. Ima ware sono seiki wo eramite kore wo toraba nanzo kudôatate-oyobubekarazaran ya. Moshi waga midzukara joki no ri wo hatsumei suru wo machi, shikaushite nochi, ware hajimete joki kikai wo mochiyuru wo ubeku, denki no ri wo hatsumei suru wo machi shikashite nochi ware hajimete denshin no sen wo ga-suru wo ubeki to suru ka? Seifu ha masa ni te wo kudasu no koto nakarubeshi.

Shin ra sudeni sudeni konjitsu waga kuni minsi gen wo tatezunba arubekarazaru yuen oyobi konjitsu waga kuni jimmin shimp no do yoku kono gen wo tatsu no nashi koto wo benron suru mono ha sunahachi yushi no kore wo kobamu
mono wo shite kuchi ni seki suru tokoro nakarashimen to ni arazu, kono giin wo tatsu ru tenka no koron wo shincho shi jimmin no tsugi kenri wo tate, tenka no genki wo kobu shi, mochite shôka shinkin shi kunshin ahi-ai shi waga teikoku wo iji shinki shi kôfuku anzen wo hogo sen koto wo hosshite nari. Kofu sahiwahi ni kore wo erabi-tamahan koto wo.

**Translation.**

The opinions contained in the Memorial hereto annexed which we have the honour to address to you having constantly been held by us, and some of us during our period of office having repeatedly memorialized you on the same subject, an understanding was come to that after the embassy despatched to the allied powers in Europe and America should have observed the actual condition (of affairs) also, steps should be taken after due consideration of the circumstances. But although several months have elapsed since the return of the embassy to this country, we do not learn that any measures have been adopted. Of late the popular mind has been agitated, and mutual distrust has sprung up between the governors and the governed (lit. the upper and the lower), and a state of things has arrived in which it cannot be denied that there are signs of destruction and ruin being ready to break forth at any moment. The cause of this we profoundly regret to say is, in effect, the suppression of the general opinion of the Empire as ascertained by public discussion.

We trust that you will give this matter due consideration.

17th January, 1874.

**Soejima Taneomi,** Samurai of the Saga ken.
**Gotô Shôjirô,** Samurai of the Tôkiô-Fu.
**Itagaki Taiske,** Samurai of the Kôchi ken.
**Etô Shimpei,** Samurai of the Saga ken.
**Mitsuoka Hachirô,** Samurai of the Tsuruga ken.
**Yuri Kimmassa,** Samurai of the Tsuruga ken.
When we humbly reflect upon the quarter in which the governing power at present lies, we find that it lies not with the Crown (the imperial house) above, nor with the people below but with the officials alone. We do not deny that above the officials respect the Crown, and yet the Crown is gradually losing its prestige (lit. honour and splendour), nor do we deny that below they protect the people, and yet the manifold decrees of government appear in the morning and are changed in the evening, the administration is conducted in an arbitrary manner, rewards and punishments are prompted by partiality, the channel by which the people should communicate with the government is blocked up and they cannot state their grievances. Is it hoped that the Empire can be peacefully ruled in this manner? Even a child three feet high knows that it cannot be done. We fear, therefore, that if this continues, and a reform is not effected, the state will be ruined. Unable to resist the promptings of our patriotic feelings, we have sought a means of rescuing it from this danger, and we find it to consist solely in developing public discussion by the Empire. The only means of developing public discussion is the establishment of a council-chamber chosen by the people. Then a limit will be placed to the power of the officials, and both governors and governed will obtain peace and prosperity. We ask leave, then, to make some remarks on this subject.

The people, whose duty it is to pay taxes to the government, possess the right of sharing in the direction of their government's affairs, and of approving or condemning. This being a principle universally acknowledged, it is not necessary for us to waste words in discussing it. We therefore humbly
pray that the officials will not resist this great truth. Those who now oppose the establishment of a council-chamber chosen by the people say: "Our people are wanting in culture and intelligence, and have not yet advanced into the region of enlightenment. Therefore it must necessarily be too early yet to establish a council-chamber elected by the people." It is our opinion that if it really be as they say, then the way to give to the people culture and intelligence, and to cause them to advance swiftly into the region of enlightenment is to establish a council-chamber chosen by the people. For in order to give our people culture and intelligence and to cause them to advance into the region of enlightenment, they must in the first place be induced to fulfil their duties and protect their rights, to respect and value themselves, and must be inspired with a spirit of sympathy with the griefs and joys of the Empire, which can only be done by giving them a voice in the concerns of the Empire. It has never happened that under such circumstances the people have been content to remain in a backward condition or have been satisfied with want of culture and intelligence. To expect now that they will acquire culture and intelligence by themselves and advance by themselves into the region of enlightenment, is very much like "waiting a hundred years for the water to clear."* The worst argument they put forward is that to establish a council-chamber at once would be simply to assemble all the blockheads in the Empire. What shocking self-conceit and arrogant contempt for the people this indicates! No doubt amongst the officials there are men who surpass others in intelligence and ingenuity, but how do they know that the world does not also contain men who surpass the multitude in learning and knowledge? Wherefore the

* A quotation from the Tsochuan. The Yellow river is said to be a muddy stream, but to become clear at intervals of a thousand years. The text says "a hundred," which is no doubt a slip of the pen.
people of the Empire should not be treated with such contempt. Admitting that they deserve to be treated with contempt, are the officials themselves not a part of the nation, in which case they also are wanting in culture and intelligence? Between the arbitrary decisions of a few officials and the general opinion of the people as ascertained by public discussion, where is the balance of wisdom and stupidity? We believe that the intelligence of the officials must have made progress as compared with what it was previous to the Reformation,* for the intelligence and knowledge of human beings increase in proportion as they are exercised. Therefore we have said that to establish a council-chamber chosen by the people would promote the culture and intelligence of the people and cause them to advance rapidly into the region of enlightenment. It is further the duty of a government and the object which it ought to promote in the fulfilment of that duty to enable the people to make progress. Consequently in uncivilized ages, when manners were barbarous, and the people fierce, turbulent, and unaccustomed to obey, it was of course the duty of a government to teach them to obey; but our country is now no longer uncivilized, and the tractableness of our people is already excessive. The object which our government ought therefore now to promote is by the establishment of a council-chamber chosen by the people to arouse in our people a spirit of enterprise, and to enable them to comprehend the duty of participating in the burdens of the Empire and sharing in the direction of its affairs, and then the people of the whole country will be of one mind.

What is it that makes a government strong? It is by the people of the Empire being of one mind. We need not prove this by quoting ancient historical facts. We will show it by the change in our government of October last. How great

* I.e. The restoration of the Mikado's government.
was its peril! What is the reason of our government standing isolated? How many of the people of the Empire rejoiced at or grieved over the change in the government of October last? Not only was there neither grief nor joy on account of it, but eight or nine out of every ten of the people of the Empire were utterly ignorant that it had taken place, and they were only surprised at the disbanding of the troops. The establishment at present of a council chamber chosen by the people will create community of feeling between the government and the people, and they will mutually unite into one body. Then and only then will the country be strong: Then and only then will the government be strong.

We have now investigated the question in the light of universal principles; we have shown the truth in regard to it by reference to the tendencies of the day in this country; we have discussed it in reference to the duties of a government, and have tested it by the case of the change which occurred in our government in October last. Our belief in the justice of our views is strengthened, and we earnestly contend that the only way to maintain and develope the destinies of (lit. to move up) the Empire is to establish a council-chamber chosen by the people and to develope public discussion by the Empire. We will not here enlarge upon the means by which the idea is to be wrought out, as that would occupy too much space.

We are informed that the present officials, under the pretence of being conservative, are generally averse from progress. They call those who advocate reforms “the rash progressists,” and oppose them with the two words “too early.” We ask leave to make an explanation here.

In the first place we do not comprehend the phrase “rash progression.” If by “rash progression” is meant measures which are heedlessly initiated, then it is a council-chamber
chosen by the people which will render them prudent. Do they mean by “rash progression” the want of harmony between the different departments of the government and its consequences, viz., the disturbance, during a period of change, of the sequence of beginning and end, of not urgent and urgent, and the incongruity of this measure with that? The cause of this is the want of a fixed law in the country, and the fact that the officials abandon themselves to the promptings of their own inclinations. These two facts we look upon as precisely a confirmation of the reasons which render it necessary to establish a council-chamber chosen by the people. Progress is the most beautiful thing in the world, and is the law of all things moral and physical. Officials cannot condemn this word “progress”: their condemnation must be confined to the word “rash,” which has no connexion with a council-chamber chosen by the people.

We are not only simply unable to comprehend what the words “too early” have to do with a council-chamber elected by the people, but our opinion is directly the opposite of this. For if a council-chamber chosen by the people were established to-day, we may fairly suppose that it could not be expected to be in complete working order until months and years had elapsed. We are only afraid therefore of a single day’s delay in establishing it, and therefore we say that we hold the opposite of this opinion.

We shall mention another argument of the officials. They say that the council-chambers now existing in European and American States were not formed in one morning or one evening, but were only constituted by gradual progress, and therefore we cannot to-day copy them suddenly. But gradual progress has not been the case of council-chambers only; the same is the case with all branches of learning and science and mechanical art. The reason why foreigners have perfected this only after the lapse of centuries is that no rules existed
previously, and these were all discovered by them for themselves by actual experience. If we now select these rules and adopt them, why should we not be successful in our endeavours? If we are to delay using steam machinery until we have discovered the principles of steam for ourselves, or to wait until we have discovered the principles of electricity before we construct an electric telegraph, our government will be unable to set to work.

Our object in seeking to prove that a council-chamber elected by the people ought to-day to be established in our country, and that the degree of progress amongst the people of this country is sufficient for the establishment of such a council-chamber, is not to prevent the officials from making use of various pretexts for opposing it, but we are animated by the desire that by establishing such a council-chamber public discussion by the Empire may be developed, the duties and rights of the people be established, the spirit of the Empire be roused to activity, the affection between governors and governed be made closer, sovereign and subject be brought to love each other, our imperial country be maintained and its destinies developed, and prosperity and peace be assured to all. We shall esteem ourselves fortunate if you will adopt our suggestions.

Notes.

1 Soregashi ra, "certain persons," "we.
2 Totematsuri is written in the Chinese order before the noun which it governs.—3 Ni is not written, but must be supplied in reading.—4 Oyobi is also written before its noun.
5 Tokoro is something like "whereas." It is represented in the translation by the ing of "having."—6 Yō-bei. Yō, the first syllable of Yōropā, Europe: bei is for me, the second syllable of America.—7 Mo. Not only the arguments of the memorialists, but actual observation on the spot "also."—8 Ahi has little meaning here.—9 Kore is inserted before ari in imitation of Chinese construction. It is superfluous.—10 Shikaru ni, lit. "in its being so," i.e. "although this was so."—11 Safurahedomo, pronounced sōraedomo.—12 Mafushi-gataki. This compound is written in
the Chinese order.—"*Gi, "matter." This word is qualified by the whole passage from sakkon on.—"*Itari, "matter," lit. "go."—"*Togearurubeku. Togeraru is the conclusive of the passive (used as a honorific) of the verb "tegeru," "to complete."—"*Furusaha Urô, &c. The signatures are in the opposite order to what we should expect, the most honourable position being in Japanese that next the name of the person addressed. Furusaha, although his name occupies the least honourable place, is believed to be the actual writer of this Memorial.—"* The Sa-in is no longer in existence. It was a board associated with the Council of State. One of its duties was to examine all memorials presented to the Government.—"* Shin ra, "your servants," "we," only used in addressing the Government.—"* Fushite, lit. "with the face to the ground."—"* Sore is superfluous. It is inserted in imitation of a Chinese construction. —"* Aratamezu is conditional. The omission of ba is characteristic of the semi-Chinese style.—"* Nomi at the end of a sentence is an imitation of Chinese.—"* Haru, lit. "to stretch."—"* Kofu. In ordinary Japanese this verb would be at the end of the sentence instead of at the beginning. —"* Tenka sometimes means "Japan" only; sometimes, as here, "the universe."—"* Matazaru, for matazu aru, "does not wait for," i.e., "does not require."—"* Hisoka ni, "privately," hence "humbly." This application of hisoka ni is in imitation of Chinese, where the character corresponding to this word has also this secondary meaning.—"* Koto wo. Koto is governed by the verb negafu which precedes it. This is a Chinese construction.—"* Fagaku muchi. Supply ni te after these words. —"* Tatsuru is a noun ("the establishment") nominative to hayakarubeshi. In proper Japanese tatsuru would have some particle, as no or ha, added to it to show that it is a noun. The semi-Chinese style, however, rejects particles as far as possible.—"* Omoheraku is omoheru, perfect of omofu and aku, a termination which gives the verb the force of a noun. Shin ra omohera, "our opinion (is that)."—"* Ifu tokoro, "that which they say." Tokoro is here the relative.—"* Nani to narēba. "Because it is what?" i.e. "for what reason?"—"* Waga jimmin wo shite. Shite is altogether superfluous.—"* Su. By a Chinese construction for the hypothetical seba.—"* Seshime. Causative of suru, "to do," "to make."—"* Kore wo shite. Shite is again superfluous. It adds nothing to the sense, is unnecessary for the grammar, and is only inserted in blind imitation of Chinese.—"* Kaku no gotooku. The Chinese characters for these two words are written in the reverse order to that in which they are read.—"* Arazaru nari. A circumlocution for arazu.—"* Hanahadashiki ha. "The worst is......to ifu ni itaru, that they proceed to say."—"* Ha
nahadashiku. Adverbial form, the sentence not ending till betzujo taru-ya.—42 Betsujo taru ya. Ya is an interjection merely. Taru is in the attributive form, owing to the sentence containing the interrogative nanzo.

—43 Yo, for yo ni or yo no naka ni.—44 Shiran ya. Ya is here the interrogative particle.—45 Nani to nareba......nareba nari. "Because of what is it? It is because......"—46 Michi nari to. To is joined with ihaku two lines back.—47 Eshimuru. E is the root of uru, "to get," and seshimuru the causative of suru, "to do."—48 Ni ari. Ni is often, as here, the sign of the predicate of a proposition.—49 Shitagaifu tokoro. "Where to be obedient."—50 Shirashimuru, causative of shiru, "to know."—51 Mono in the semi-Chinese style is often equivalent to the particle ha of proper Japanese.—52 Su, conclusive form of suru, "to know," "to account."

—53 Jimnin wo shite, equivalent to jimnin ni of proper Japanese. —54 Ikubaku ka aru. Aru, the attributive, instead of ari, the conclusive, owing to the interrogative which precedes.—55 Jiu no shite. Shite would be omitted in proper Japanese.—56 Nomi, a Japanese word, is written with the two Chinese characters 而 代.—57 Mochite, 'by this means.'

—58 Kōgi wo haru ni aru nomi to. To refers back to setsu ni ifu.—59 Hōshō tō. Tō marks the plural.—50 Gotoki properly means "such matters as," but in the semi-Chinese style it has often very little meaning. It has been entirely omitted in the translation.—61 Jiu-su-mai-shi. "More than ten sheets of paper."—62 Hisoka ni, "secretly," must not be understood too literally. It merely means that they have heard from some one whom it is unnecessary to name.—63 Shinra kofu. The Japanese construction would be shinra mata kore wo benshen koto wo kofu.—64 Mono would be ha in proper Japanese.—65 Teichō ni suru tokoro no mono, "a thing which renders prudent." Tokoro is here a relative.—66 Mochite is here superfluous.—67 Tatsunba arubekarazu. Tatsunba. N is inserted for euphony. It is pronounced m. This phrase is equivalent to the colloquial tateneba naranu, "must erect or establish."—68 Sono tsuni suru tokoro. "That which they blame."—69 Tatsuru ni okeru. Okeru would be ni oite or ni tsuite in ordinary Japanese.—70 Ikan (for ikani) to nareba. See above, nani to nareba.—71 Tatsuru mo would be in ordinary Japanese tatsu to iedono, or in the spoken language, tatehono.—72 Sono qualifies kisuru. "Its attaining perfection."—73 Mo-suru wo ezu. "We do not get the imitating," i.e., "We are unable to imitate."—74 Ani is placed at the beginning of an interrogative clause and shows that a negative answer is expected.—75 Suihaku nen no hisashiki wo tsunite. "Accumulat- ing the length of several hundred years."—76 Itaseshi mono ha......nareba nari. "Their having done this......is because."......Mono is super-
fluous.—77 Kuwadate-oyobu-beki-ara-z'-ara-n-ya. Endeavour-reach-should-be-not-be-fut.-interrog.—78 Ube'ku, conclusive form of uru, “to get,” “obtain,” “be able,” and beku, adverbial form of beki, “should.”—79 Shika shite and shikau shite (pron. shikō shite) are the same, the u being inserted for euphony.—80 Oyobī, “and.”—81 Benron suru mono ha. “The reason why we maintain.” Mono is nominative to nari at the end of the sentence.—82 Mochīte. “By means of all these.”
以書輪致啓上候然者台灣蕃地之兇徒問罪之儀

凡我政府清國政府意見齋齋諱生

談判鬱結遂好和難保存場合立到候處

北京駐劄貴國全權公使閣下我辦理大臣彼

諸大臣間二御周旋有別紙之通協議相整

互二條款交換候旨右辦理大臣ヨリ官員令

歸朝作日到着今日及具狀候間入御臥候候

我政府ノ趣意貫徹シ両國ノ幸福ニ到候

儀右貴全權公使閣下ノ御盡力不少儀ノ存候
依之不取敬一應及陳謝候條貴政府並在北京
使者閣下工可然御傳致被下度右謝詞申進

大不列顛國特命全権公使

外務卿寺島宗則

ハルリー・エスペーガス

閣下
I have the honour to address you a letter. A difference having arisen between the views of our Government and that of China in respect to the matter of the chastisement of the savages of the barbarous part of Formosa, there was a hitch in the negotiations, and they at last reached a position in which the preservation of friendly relations was impossible, His Excellency the honourable country’s Minister Plenipotentiary resident at Pekin then used his good offices between our High Commissioner and their high officials. An agreement
was thus brought about and articles mutually exchanged as in the enclosure.

Our High Commissioner sent an officer back to Japan with this intelligence. This officer arrived yesterday and has made his report to me to-day. I therefore place it (the agreement) in your hands for your private perusal.

I am sensible that no small exertion has been made by His Excellency your honourable Minister before-mentioned in arriving at a result in which the views of this Government have gained acceptance, and which is fortunate for both countries. I accordingly hasten to offer to you this expression of thanks, which I beg you will be good enough to convey in a suitable manner to the honourable Government and to the honourable Minister at Pekin.

I wish to offer the above thanks. Thus it is.

With respect.

November 12th, 1874.

TERASHIMA MUNENORI,
Minister for Foreign Affairs.

To His Excellency Sir HARRY S. PARKES,
Envoy Extraordinary and Minister Plenipotentiary of Great Britain.

NOTES.

This is a specimen of the style of official letters.

1 Shok an wo mochite. Wo is not written, but is always supplied in reading. Mochite is pronounced motte. In writing this phrase, the Chinese order of the characters is followed, that for mochite coming first.

2 Shikareba, lit. "this being so." To shikareba inclusive may be freely rendered "I have the honour to inform you that—."—

3 Taiwan banchi is for Taiwan no banchi.

4 Seikoku. Sei, in Chinese Tsing, is properly the name of the Manchu dynasty of Emperors of China. Seikoku is the ordinary word for China in official correspondence.

5 Shōji, adverbial form of shōzuru, from shō, "producing," and suru, "to do."—

Ukketsu, After ukketsu must be understood shite. The constant omission of unimportant words and particles is characteristic of the semi-Chinese style.
—^ Tachi has little meaning here.—^ Hokkin. Ni must be understood after Hokkin.—^ Kikoku. “The honourable country,” i.e., your country. —^ Sho daijin. Sho marks the plural.—^ Kore ari. Kore is superfluous in Japanese: it is introduced in imitation of the Chinese construction. —^ Kichó, “return to court,” i.e., to Japan.—^ Seshime. Adverbial form of seshimuru, the causative of suru, “to do.” The character for this word is placed Chinese-fashion before the noun which it governs.—^ Goku. Goku is for koku, “country.”—^ Migi, “the right,” corresponds to “the above mentioned,” Japanese being written from right to left.—^ Sukunakarazaru, i.e., sukunaku ara-zu aru is represented by the two characters 不少, the first of which represents zu, and the other the remainder. —^ Kikóshi, “the honourable minister,” i.e., your country’s minister.
无标题

我虽然知道还有许多事情需要做，但我已经尽力了。我一直在努力，但是结果并不如我所希望的那样。我感到十分沮丧和失望。

我试图找到一条出路，但是这并不容易。我需要更多的勇气和决心。我需要更加坚定和自信。

我相信我最终会找到一个解决方案。我不会放弃，我会继续努力。我不会忘记我所做的一切，我会有信心，我会坚持下去。我不会轻易放弃。

我感到十分沮丧和失望。我一直在努力，但是结果并不如我所希望的那样。我需要更加坚定和自信。我需要找到一条出路，但是这并不容易。

我相信我最终会找到一个解决方案。我不会放弃，我会继续努力。我不会忘记我所做的一切，我会有信心，我会坚持下去。我不会轻易放弃。
息迄被召寄重々御懇情深存候且長席縷々御清談感謝之至存候其節御詰申上候草木培養書原書廻申上候條御一覧被下度候昨日之令間違之書類天甚以御気之毒存候早々右得貴意度如此候敬具

八月七日

竹中良介様

貴下

松井敬蔵
IX.

VERSION IN ROMAN LETTERS.

Ippitsu¹ keijo. Shikareba sakujitsu ha sankan² go teinei go kidō, koto ni gusoku made meshi-yoserare, jiu-jiu go konsei katajikenaku zonji safurafu. Katsu chōseki ruru go seidan kansha no itari ni zonji safurafu. Sono setsu on hanashimafushi-æge safurafu somoku baiyôsho gensho on mahashimafushi-æge safurafu jō,³ go ichiran kudasaretaku-safurafu; sakujitsu no bun ha machigahi no shorui nite hanahada mochite on kinodoku ni zonji safurafu. Sôsô migi kiï etaku,¹ kaku no gotoku⁴ ni safurafu. Keigu.

Hachigwatsu nanoka.

Matsuda Keizô.

Takenaka Rïosuke sama
Kika.

TRANSLATION.

I address you a stroke of the pen.

I am grateful for your extreme kindness in entertaining me so courteously when I visited your residence yesterday, and especially for having invited my son also. Further, I feel that your conversation at our long interview is matter for thankfulness. I beg now to send you the originals of the papers on the rearing of plants and trees which I then spoke to you of, and hope you will peruse them. I am extremely sorry that those I brought yesterday were the wrong papers.

In haste. Please take note of the above. Thus it is.

With respect.

August 7th.

MATSUDA KEIZÔ.

TO TAKENAKA RÏOSUKE, ESQ.
This is a specimen of the ordinary style of a private letter. The version in the current hand is a facsimile of the original, the version in square character being added for the sake of comparison.

1 Ippitsu, for ichi hitsu, "one pen." Almost all Japanese letters begin by this or one of the numerous phrases of similar meaning, and go on with shikareba, "this being so," &c.— Sankan. The construction here is very elliptical. The full construction would be sankan no toki go teinei no kidô wo uke.— Jô. See p. 78.— Kii etaku, kaku no gotoku. In writing these phrases, the Chinese order of the characters is followed.
# INDEX

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A (pronoun)</th>
<th>50</th>
<th>Ba</th>
<th>135, 144, 146</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td>117</td>
<td>Bakari</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abstract nouns</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>Bara</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accents, Chinese</td>
<td>Intro. v</td>
<td>Baya</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Japanese</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>Beki</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>113</td>
<td>Bemi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjective, conjug.</td>
<td>93</td>
<td>Bera</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;derivative&quot;</td>
<td>103</td>
<td>Bei</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;root of&quot;</td>
<td>82</td>
<td>Boku</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;syntax of&quot;</td>
<td>181</td>
<td>Buru</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adverbs</td>
<td>169</td>
<td>Case suffixes</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adverbial form</td>
<td>82</td>
<td>Causative verbs</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Affinities of Japanese</td>
<td>Intro. i</td>
<td>Chin</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Afu</td>
<td>169</td>
<td>Chinese character</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agglutination</td>
<td>Intro. i</td>
<td>&quot;pronunciation of&quot;</td>
<td>Introd. iii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aguru</td>
<td>165</td>
<td>&quot;study of&quot;</td>
<td>Introd. ii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ahida</td>
<td>77</td>
<td>Chōka</td>
<td>186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ahoshiki</td>
<td>143</td>
<td>Classical language</td>
<td>Introd. viii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aku</td>
<td>142</td>
<td>Classification of words</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anata</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>Compound adjectives</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anī</td>
<td>123</td>
<td>&quot;nouns&quot;...</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anō</td>
<td>59, 62</td>
<td>&quot;verbs&quot;...</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aphaeresis</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>Conclusive form</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are, personal pron.</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>Conjugations, adjectives</td>
<td>81, 93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;demonstrative pron.&quot;</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>&quot;verbs&quot;...</td>
<td>81, 90, 94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aru</td>
<td>89, 92, 98, 99, 153, 167</td>
<td>Conjunctions</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aru hito</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>Consonants, assimilation of</td>
<td>21, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asobasu</td>
<td>167</td>
<td>&quot;changes of&quot;</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aspirates, loss of</td>
<td>22, 30</td>
<td>&quot;double&quot;...</td>
<td>28, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assimilation</td>
<td>21, 28</td>
<td>Crasis</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attraction</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>Dachi</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attributive form</td>
<td>85</td>
<td>Dani</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auxiliary numerals</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>Dare</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auxiliary verbs</td>
<td>162</td>
<td>Datera</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B, interchange with M</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>Dative</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAGE</td>
<td>INDEX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>144</td>
<td>De</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>Demonstrative pronouns</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59</td>
<td>Denka</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>Derivation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>93</td>
<td>Derivative verbs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103</td>
<td>Derivative adjectives</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>Derived nouns</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66</td>
<td>Distributive pronouns</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Division of words</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>146</td>
<td>Do</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118</td>
<td>Domo, plural particle</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>146</td>
<td>Dore, dono</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>192</td>
<td>Dramatic poetry</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>130</td>
<td>Dzutsu</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>E, changes of</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23, 194</td>
<td>Elision</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>Etymology</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>F, changes of</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20, 22</td>
<td>,, pronunciation of</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94</td>
<td>Fu, term. of verbs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>G, pronunciation of</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107</td>
<td>Ga</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>132, 136</td>
<td>Gachi</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>136</td>
<td>Gari</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>102</td>
<td>Garu</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119</td>
<td>Gata</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>133, 136</td>
<td>Gatera</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>Ge</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>Gender</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>Genji Monogatari</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107, 182</td>
<td>Genitive particles</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>Go</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>132, 136</td>
<td>Gochi</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59</td>
<td>Gohen</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Go-on</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>goto ni</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59</td>
<td>Gozen</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Grammar, divine origin of</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48, 54</td>
<td>Gu</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>93</td>
<td>Gu, term. of deriv. verbs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>H, changes of</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>,, pronunciation of</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120</td>
<td>Ha, after nouns</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>135</td>
<td>,, after verbs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>162</td>
<td>Haberu</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>190</td>
<td>Haikwai</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>188</td>
<td>Hanka</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16, 28</td>
<td>Han-nigori</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>79</td>
<td>Hataraki kotoba</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112</td>
<td>He</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59</td>
<td>Heika</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>Hi</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Hiragana</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>,, table of</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66</td>
<td>Hito</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>189</td>
<td>Hokku</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>Honorific prefixes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>161</td>
<td>,, verbs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>161</td>
<td>Humble verbs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>Humble prefixes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>Hybrid compounds</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>I, changes of</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64</td>
<td>Idzu</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64</td>
<td>Idaure</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64</td>
<td>Ika</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64</td>
<td>Iku</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
<td>Imashi</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>89</td>
<td>Imperative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65</td>
<td>Indefinite pronouns</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>148</td>
<td>Inflected Teniwoha</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Indeflection</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Introd. i, note, viii</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>79</td>
<td>,, table of</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>81</td>
<td>Instrumental case</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78</td>
<td>Interjections</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63, 125, 140, 174, 178</td>
<td>Interrogatives</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95</td>
<td>Intransitive verbs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>92</td>
<td>Inuru</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>170, 172, 173</td>
<td>Inversion</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Iroha</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>92</td>
<td>Irregular verbs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Italics, marks of</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64</td>
<td>Itsu</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Ji, pronunciation of</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>67</td>
<td>Jibun</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Index</td>
<td>Page</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ji-shin</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jō</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Joka</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K, loss of</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ka, interrog.</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>65, 125, 142, 178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ka, pronoun</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>59, 60, 62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; termin. of nouns</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kagura</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaha</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaheshi uta</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kakari Teniwoha</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kakka</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kamuri kotoha</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kana</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kana, interjection</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kano</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kan-on</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>Introd. iv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kanuru</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kara</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>117, 141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kare</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>59, 62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kashi</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Katakana</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>3, 5, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Katsute</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ke</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Keki</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Keku</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ken-yō-gen</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Keru</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ki, honorific prefix</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; past particle, &quot; term. of adjectives</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>81, 85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kiden</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kijō...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kika</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>58, 59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kikoyuru</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kikun</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kimi</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kiōka</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kisama</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kizen</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kiyatsu</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ko...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kono</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Index</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kore</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Koso</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kotoba</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Koyatsu</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ku</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kudasaru</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kuru</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Letter changes</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Locative</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loochooan</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M, changes of</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Made</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mafusu</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mairasuru</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Majiki</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Makaru</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Makura kotoha</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mana</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manyōshū</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maro</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mashi, pronoun</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; particle</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mashika</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Masu</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manto</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Me, fem. prefix</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; future suffix</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mei-mei</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meru</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metre</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mi, termin. of nouns</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; pronoun</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; prefix</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Midomo</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Midzukara</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minashi</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—mi—mi</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mina</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mo...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mogamo</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mogana</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Term</td>
<td>Page</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mono wo</td>
<td>115</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mono kara</td>
<td>117</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mōsu</td>
<td>164</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Motowori</td>
<td>72</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Mu, termin. of deriv. verbs&quot;</td>
<td>93, 102</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N, &quot;future suffix&quot;</td>
<td>155</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N, &quot;changes of&quot;</td>
<td>48</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N, &quot;pronunciation of&quot;</td>
<td>69</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Na, &quot;part of speech&quot;</td>
<td>72</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nando</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nafu</td>
<td>57</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nagara</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Naga-uta</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Namo</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nan, &quot;after nouns&quot;</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nani</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nanigashi</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nanika</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Namino</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nanji</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nare</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Naru</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nasaruru</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Na-so</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ngeri</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ni (locative particle)</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ni, &quot;neg. particle&quot;</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nigiri</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ni keri</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nite</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nō</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nommi</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Nominative absolute&quot;</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Norito, writing of</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noun</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nu, &quot;neg. suffix&quot;</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Numerals</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;O, auxiliary&quot;</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ohomi</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Okoshionotob</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Okoto</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Omahe</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Onmi</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Onodzukara</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Onomatopoetic adverbs</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ono-ono</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Onore</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Order of words</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ordinals</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Otemahe</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parallelism</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passive verbs</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plural suffixes</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Possessive particles</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prefixes, honorific</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prefixes, humble</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Printing, Japanese</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pronouns</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prosody</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pronunciation</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Punctuation</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quotation</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R, changes of</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ra, &quot;pronunciation of nouns&quot;</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;plural suffix&quot;</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ran</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Raruru</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INDEX.</td>
<td>PAGE</td>
<td>INDEX.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rashi</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rashiki</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reduplicated plurals</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reflexive pronouns</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relative pronouns</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Renyōgen</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Renka</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Root of verb and adjective</td>
<td>42, 43, 82</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ru, disappearance of</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ru, termin. of deriv. verbs</td>
<td>93, 102</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kuru</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S, pronunciation</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sa</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saibara</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saidangen</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Samurafu</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sasuru</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sedōka</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semi-Chinese style</td>
<td>Introd. vii, 171, 173</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sen</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Senriu</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sessha</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setsu</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sh, pronunciation</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shi, reflexive pronoun</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shi, suffix to nouns</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shi, past particle</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shi, termin. of adjective</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shiga or Shigana</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>148, 150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shika</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shiki</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shimuru</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shin</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shindaiji</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shiu...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sho</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shō</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>48, 55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shōzengen</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>So</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sokka</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soko</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>57, 61</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### INDEX

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Transliteration</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
<th>Ware</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tsu, kana</td>
<td>21, 29</td>
<td>Waro</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; genitive particle</td>
<td>107</td>
<td>Watakushi</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; termination of numerals</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>Wo, masc. prefix</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; verbal suffix</td>
<td>148</td>
<td>&quot; sign of accusative</td>
<td>113, 141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tsuiku</td>
<td>195</td>
<td>Wo ba...</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tsuru</td>
<td>148</td>
<td>Writing</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tsutsu</td>
<td>136</td>
<td>&quot; marks used in</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;tsu—tsu</td>
<td>137</td>
<td>Ya, interrog.</td>
<td>125, 140, 146, 147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U, changes of</td>
<td>23, 25</td>
<td>&quot; vocative case</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; pronunciation</td>
<td>19, 21</td>
<td>Yaran</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uninflected principal words</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>Yatsu</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uninflected teniwoha</td>
<td>106, 134</td>
<td>Yatsugare</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uru</td>
<td>99, 168</td>
<td>Yayo</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Utahi</td>
<td>192</td>
<td>Yo, pers. pronoun</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verbs</td>
<td>79</td>
<td>&quot; imperative</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; humble or honorific</td>
<td>161</td>
<td>&quot; vocative case</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; as adverbs</td>
<td>169</td>
<td>&quot; after conclusive form</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; as conjunctions</td>
<td>169</td>
<td>Yori...</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vocative case</td>
<td>117</td>
<td>Yuye</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vowel changes</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>Zaru</td>
<td>156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W, pronunciation</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Zetteigen</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wa, pronoun</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>Zo</td>
<td>128, 174, 178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; particle</td>
<td>See ha</td>
<td>Zokutaigen</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waga</td>
<td>51, 67</td>
<td>Zokuyōgen</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wagimi</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>Zu, neg. particle</td>
<td>155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waraha</td>
<td>52</td>
<td>&quot; future</td>
<td>156</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**PRINTED BY**

JOHN EDWARD FRANCIS, 13, BREAM'S BUILDINGS, CHANCERY LANE, E.C.